Effective December 15, 2014.

Updated for all official releases through August 2022.
# Table of Contents

Preface: Applicable to All Members ................................................................. 1

0.100 Overview of the Code of Professional Conduct ........................................ 1
  .01 .................................................................................................................. 1
  .02 .................................................................................................................. 1
  .03 .................................................................................................................. 1
  0.100.010 Principles and Rules of Conduct ...................................................... 1
  0.100.020 Interpretations and Other Guidance ................................................ 1

0.200 Structure and Application of the AICPA Code ........................................ 2
  0.200.010 Structure of the AICPA Code .......................................................... 2
  0.200.020 Application of the AICPA Code ...................................................... 2
  0.200.030 Citations ......................................................................................... 3
  0.200.040 Transition Provisions ..................................................................... 4
  0.200.050 Drafting Conventions .................................................................. 4

0.300 Principles of Professional Conduct ......................................................... 5
  0.300.010 Preamble ...................................................................................... 5
  0.300.020 Responsibilities .......................................................................... 5
  0.300.030 The Public Interest ....................................................................... 5
  0.300.040 Integrity ....................................................................................... 6
  0.300.050 Objectivity and Independence ...................................................... 6
  0.300.060 Due Care ..................................................................................... 7
  0.300.070 Scope and Nature of Services ....................................................... 7

0.400 Definitions .............................................................................................. 8
  .01 .................................................................................................................. 8
  .02 .................................................................................................................. 8
  .03 .................................................................................................................. 9
  .04 .................................................................................................................. 9
  .05 .................................................................................................................. 9
  .06 .................................................................................................................. 10
  .07 .................................................................................................................. 10
  .08 .................................................................................................................. 10
  .09 .................................................................................................................. 10
  .10 .................................................................................................................. 10
  .11 .................................................................................................................. 11
  .12 .................................................................................................................. 11
  .13 .................................................................................................................. 11
  .14 .................................................................................................................. 11
  .15 .................................................................................................................. 12
  .16 .................................................................................................................. 12
  .17 .................................................................................................................. 12
  .18 .................................................................................................................. 12
  .19 .................................................................................................................. 12
  .20 .................................................................................................................. 12
  .21 .................................................................................................................. 12
  .22 .................................................................................................................. 12
  .23 .................................................................................................................. 13
  .24 .................................................................................................................. 13
  .25 .................................................................................................................. 13
  .26 .................................................................................................................. 13
  .27 .................................................................................................................. 13
  .28 .................................................................................................................. 13
  .29 .................................................................................................................. 14
AICPA Code of Professional Conduct

1.000 Introduction .......................................................... 24
  .01 ..................................................................................... 24
  .02 ..................................................................................... 24
  .03 ..................................................................................... 24
  1.000.010 Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice ... 24
  1.000.020 Ethical Conflicts .................................................. 30
1.100 Integrity and Objectivity .................................................. 31
  1.100.001 Integrity and Objectivity Rule .................................... 31
  Interpretations Under the Integrity and Objectivity Rule .......... 31
1.200 Independence ............................................................. 47
  1.200.001 Independence Rule ................................................. 47
  Interpretations Under the Independence Rule ....................... 47
1.300 General Standards ....................................................... 130
  1.300.001 General Standards Rule ......................................... 130
  Interpretations Under the General Standards Rule ................. 131
1.310 Compliance With Standards .......................................... 132
  1.310.001 Compliance With Standards Rule ......................... 132
  Interpretations Under the Compliance with Standards Rule ...... 133
1.320 Accounting Principles ................................................ 133
  1.320.001 Accounting Principles Rule .................................... 133
  Interpretations Under the Accounting Standards Rule .......... 133
1.400 Acts Discreditable ...................................................... 135
  1.400.001 Acts Discreditable Rule ........................................ 135
Interpretations Under the Acts Discreditable Rule ............................................. 136
1.500 Fees and Other Types of Remuneration .................................................. 144
  1.500.008 Unpaid Fees ........................................................................ 144
  1.510 Contingent Fees ........................................................................ 144
  1.520 Commissions and Referral Fees .................................................... 147
1.600 Advertising and Other Forms of Solicitation ........................................... 150
  1.600.001 Advertising and Other Forms of Solicitation Rule .................... 150
Interpretations Under the Advertising and Other Forms of Solicitation Rule .... 150
1.700 Confidential Information ........................................................................ 151
  1.700.001 Confidential Client Information Rule ........................................ 151
Interpretations Under the Confidential Client Information Rule ..................... 152
1.800 Form of Organization and Name .......................................................... 156
  1.800.001 Form of Organization and Name Rule ....................................... 157
Interpretations Under the Form of Organization and Name Rule ..................... 157
Part 2 ................................................................................................................. 161
  2.000 Introduction ......................................................................................... 161
    .01 ............................................................................................................ 161
    .02 ............................................................................................................ 161
  2.000.010 Conceptual Framework for Members in Business ....................... 161
  2.000.020 Ethical Conflicts ........................................................................... 165
2.100 Integrity and Objectivity ......................................................................... 166
  2.100.001 Integrity and Objectivity Rule ..................................................... 166
Interpretations Under the Integrity and Objectivity Rule .................................. 166
2.300 General Standards .................................................................................. 182
  2.300.001 General Standards Rule ............................................................... 182
Interpretations Under the General Standards Rule ........................................... 183
  2.310 Compliance With Standards ................................................................ 184
    2.310.001 Compliance With Standards Rule ........................................... 184
Interpretations Under the Compliance with Standards Rule ............................ 184
2.320 Accounting Principles ......................................................................... 184
  2.320.001 Accounting Principles Rule ........................................................ 184
Interpretations Under the Accounting Principles Rule .................................... 185
2.400 Acts Discreditable .................................................................................. 187
  2.400.001 Acts Discreditable Rule ............................................................... 187
Interpretations Under the Acts Discreditable Rule .......................................... 187
Part 3 ................................................................................................................. 191
  3.000 Introduction ......................................................................................... 191
    .01 ............................................................................................................ 191
    .02 ............................................................................................................ 191
  3.000.030 Applicability ................................................................................ 191
3.400 Acts Discreditable .................................................................................. 191
  3.400.001 Acts Discreditable Rule ............................................................... 191
Interpretations Under the Acts Discreditable Rule .......................................... 191
Appendix A ....................................................................................................... 194
Appendix B ....................................................................................................... 198
Appendix C ....................................................................................................... 198
Appendix D ....................................................................................................... 212
Preface: Applicable to All Members

0.100 Overview of the Code of Professional Conduct

.01 The AICPA Code of Professional Conduct (the code) begins with this preface, which applies to all members. The term member, when used in part 1 of the code, applies to and means a member in public practice; when used in part 2 of the code, applies to and means a member in business; and when used in part 3 of the code, applies to and means all other members, such as those members who are retired or unemployed.

.02 A member may have multiple roles, such as a member in business and a member in public practice. In such circumstances, the member should consult all applicable parts of the code and apply the most restrictive provisions. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.03 Effective December 15, 2014.

0.100.010 Principles and Rules of Conduct

.01 The AICPA membership adopted the Code of Professional Conduct (the code) to provide guidance and rules to all members in the performance of their professional responsibilities. The code consists of principles and rules as well as interpretations and other guidance which are discussed in 0.100.020. The principles provide the framework for the rules that govern the performance of their professional responsibilities.

.02 The AICPA bylaws require that members adhere to the rules of the code. Compliance with the rules depends primarily on members’ understanding and voluntary actions; secondarily on reinforcement by peers and public opinion; and ultimately on disciplinary proceedings, when necessary, against members who fail to comply with the rules. Members must be prepared to justify departures from these rules.

0.100.020 Interpretations and Other Guidance

.01 Interpretations of the rules of conduct are adopted after exposure to the membership, state societies, state boards, and other interested parties. The interpretations of the rules of conduct, “Definitions” [0.400], “Application of the AICPA Code” [0.200.020], and “Citations” [0.200.030], provide guidelines about the scope and application of the rules but are not intended to limit such scope or application. A member who departs from the interpretations shall have the burden of justifying such departure in any disciplinary hearing. Interpretations that existed before the adoption of the code on January 12, 1988, will remain in effect until further action is deemed necessary by the appropriate senior committee.

.02 A member should also consult the following, if applicable:

- The ethical requirements of the member’s state CPA society and authoritative regulatory bodies such as state board(s) of accountancy
- The Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC)
- The Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB)
- The Government Accountability Office (GAO)
- The Department of Labor (DOL)
- Federal, state and local taxing authorities
Preface: Applicable to All Members

• Any other body that regulates a member who performs professional services for an entity when the member or entity is subject to the rules and regulations of such regulatory body. [Prior reference: Introduction]

0.200 Structure and Application of the AICPA Code

0.200.010 Structure of the AICPA Code

.01 A variety of topics appear in parts 1–3 of the code. When applicable, topics are aligned with the relevant rule or rules of conduct. Topics may be further divided into subtopics, and some subtopics include one or more sections. Topics, subtopics, and sections interpret the rules of conduct (see “Interpretations and Other Guidance” [0.100.020]).

.02 Defined terms (see “Definitions” [0.400]) as well as the plurals and possessives thereof, are shown in italics throughout the code. When a defined term is used in the code but is not shown in italics, the definition in 0.400 should not be applied. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.03 Effective December 15, 2014.

0.200.020 Application of the AICPA Code

.01 The Code of Professional Conduct (the code) was originally adopted on January 12, 1988, and was periodically revised through June 1, 2014. On June 1, 2014, the AICPA issued a codification of the code’s principles, rules, interpretations and rulings (revised code). The revised code will be effective December 15, 2014, excluding the Conceptual Framework sections. These sections, “Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice” [1.000.010] and “Conceptual Framework for Members in Business” [2.000.010], will be effective December 15, 2015. Members are permitted to implement the revised code prior to December 15, 2014, but a member may not implement the relevant Conceptual Framework prior to implementing the entire revised code. Revisions made subsequent to June 1, 2014, are identified in appendix C, the Revision History Table, which notes the month and year of the change, the effective date of the change, the purpose for the revision, and when possible, a link to the marked revision of the content that appeared in the Journal of Accountancy. If the interpretation or paragraph does not contain a specific effective date or a reference to the revision history table, then the content was effective prior to June 1, 2014. [No prior reference: new content.]

.02 When used in the preface of the code, the term member includes members, associate members, and affiliate members, as well as international associates of the AICPA.

.03 The rules of conduct apply to all professional services performed, except

a. when the wording of the rule indicates otherwise.

b. that a member who is practicing outside the United States will not be considered in violation of a particular rule for departing from any of the rules stated herein, as long as the member’s conduct is in accordance with the rules of the organized accounting profession in the country in which he or she is practicing. However, when a member is associated with financial statements under circumstances that would lead the reader to assume that practices of the United States were followed, the member must comply with the “Compliance With Standards Rule” [1.310.001 for members in public practice and 2.310.001 for members in business] and the “Accounting Principles Rule” [1.320.001 for members in public practice and 2.320.001 for members in business].

c. that a member who is a member of a group engagement team (see the clarified Statement on Auditing Standards Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements [Including the Work of
Component Auditors] [AICPA, Professional Standards, AU-C sec. 600]) will not be considered in violation of a particular rule if a foreign component auditor (accountant) departed from any of the rules stated herein with respect to the audit or review of group financial statements or other attest engagement, as long as the foreign component auditor’s (accountant’s) conduct, at a minimum, is in accordance with the ethics and independence requirements set forth in the International Ethics Standards Board for Accountants’ (IESBA’s) Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants, and the members of the group engagement team are in compliance with the rules stated therein.

d. that the independence of the member’s firm will not be considered impaired if another firm or entity located outside the United States that is within the member firm’s network departed from any of the rules stated herein, as long as the other firm or entity’s conduct, at a minimum, is in accordance with the independence requirements set forth in the IESBA’s Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants.

.04 A member shall not knowingly permit a person whom the member has the authority or capacity to control to carry out on his or her behalf, either with or without compensation, acts that, if carried out by the member, would place the member in violation of the rules. Further, a member may be held responsible for the acts of all persons associated with the member in public practice whom the member has the authority or capacity to control.

.05 The independence of a member in public practice or a covered member may be impaired with respect to a client as the result of the actions or relationships, as described in the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] and its interpretations, of certain persons or entities whom the member or covered member does not have the authority or capacity to control. Even if the member is unable to control the actions or relationships of such persons or entities, the member’s independence may still be impaired. [Prior reference: ET section 91]

.06 The “Breach of an Independence Interpretation” [1.298.010] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] contains guidance with which a member should comply if the member identifies a breach of an independence interpretation of the code. If a member identifies a breach of any other provision of this code, the member should evaluate the significance of the breach and its effect on the member’s ability to comply with the rules of the code. The member should take whatever actions may be available, as soon as practicable, to satisfactorily address the consequences of the breach. The member should determine whether to report the breach, for example, to those who may have been affected by the breach, a professional body, relevant regulator, or oversight authority. In making the evaluation and in determining what actions should be taken, the member should exercise professional judgment and take into account whether a reasonable and informed third party, weighing the significance of the breach, the action to be taken, and all the specific facts and circumstances available to the member at that time, would be likely to conclude that the member is able to comply with the rules of the code. A member’s determination that the member has satisfactorily addressed the consequences of the breach will not, however, preclude an investigation or enforcement action concerning the underlying breach of the code and the member should be prepared to justify such determination.

Effective Date

.07 Paragraph .01 is effective December 15, 2014. Paragraph .06 is effective March 31, 2016, with early implementation allowed.

[See Revision History Table.]

0.200.030 Citations

Prior ET Sections

.01 The code was revised by codifying the principles, rules, interpretations, and rulings. These revisions were effective December 15, 2014. To facilitate implementation of the revised code, the prior ET references
Preface: Applicable to All Members

from the professional standards of the AICPA are included in Appendix D, “Mapping Document,” and in bracketed text at the end of standards, where applicable.

[See Revision History Table.]

Numeric Citations

.02 The numbering system for the code is “ET section X.XXX.XXX.” The single digit that begins the citation identifies the part wherein the content resides. Accordingly, content from the preface begins with the single digit 0.XXX.XXX, whereas content for part 1 begins with a 1.XXX.XXX, part 2 with 2.XXX.XXX, and part 3 with a 3.XXX.XXX.

.03 Next are two sets of three digit numbers that identify the topics and, when applicable, subtopics or sections. When a topic, subtopic or section appears in two or more parts of the code, the same number is used. For example, the “Acts Discreditable Rule” appears in parts 1, 2, and 3 and the citations for this rule are 1.400.001, 2.400.001, and 3.400.001, respectively. Accordingly, the two sets of three digit numbers remain the same with only the first digit changing.

.04 When only two digits appear, those digits represent the paragraph number. For example, the complete citation for this paragraph would be 0.200.030.04.

.05 All bracketed section references, such as [0.200.030.04] refer to sections within the Code of Professional Conduct. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.06 Effective December 15, 2014.

0.200.040 Transition Provisions

.01 The text of the transition provisions in effect as of May 31, 2013, has not been codified because the transition provisions apply to a limited number of situations. Nevertheless, these transition provisions are still authoritative. The texts of these transition provisions are available at https://us.aicpa.org/InterestAreas/ProfessionalEthics/Community/DownloadableDocuments/Transistion%20Periods.pdf. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.02 Effective December 15, 2014.

0.200.050 Drafting Conventions

.01 The code utilizes certain drafting conventions to enhance the clarity of the interpretations and definitions. For example, when the term “should consider” is used in connection with a specified procedure or action, consideration of the procedure or action by the member is presumptively required. Actual performance of the action or procedure is up to the member, based upon the outcome of the member’s consideration and the member’s professional judgment. Other drafting conventions used in the code include use of the terms “consider,” “evaluate,” and “determine,” as follows:

a. “Consider” is used when the member is required to think about several matters.

b. “Evaluate” is used when the member has to assess and weigh the significance of a matter.

c. “Determine” is used when the member has to come to a conclusion and make a decision on a matter. [No prior reference: new content]
Effective Date

0.02 Effective December 15, 2014.

A complete nonauthoritative guide, Drafting Guide—Drafting Guidelines for Integrating the Conceptual Framework and Drafting Conventions and Style Guidance, is also available at https://us.aicpa.org/InterestAreas/ProfessionalEthics/Community/DownloadableDocuments/Drafting%20Guide.pdf.

0.300 Principles of Professional Conduct

0.300.010 Preamble

0.01 Membership in the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants is voluntary. By accepting membership, a member assumes an obligation of self-discipline above and beyond the requirements of laws and regulations.

0.02 These Principles of the Code of Professional Conduct of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants express the profession’s recognition of its responsibilities to the public, to clients, and to colleagues. They guide members in the performance of their professional responsibilities and express the basic tenets of ethical and professional conduct. The Principles call for an unswerving commitment to honorable behavior, even at the sacrifice of personal advantage. [Prior reference: ET section 51]

0.300.020 Responsibilities

0.01 Responsibilities principle. In carrying out their responsibilities as professionals, members should exercise sensitive professional and moral judgments in all their activities.

0.02 As professionals, members perform an essential role in society. Consistent with that role, members of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants have responsibilities to all those who use their professional services. Members also have a continuing responsibility to cooperate with each other to improve the art of accounting, maintain the public’s confidence, and carry out the profession’s special responsibilities for self-governance. The collective efforts of all members are required to maintain and enhance the traditions of the profession. [Prior reference: ET section 52]

0.300.030 The Public Interest

0.01 The public interest principle. Members should accept the obligation to act in a way that will serve the public interest, honor the public trust, and demonstrate a commitment to professionalism.

0.02 A distinguishing mark of a profession is acceptance of its responsibility to the public. The accounting profession’s public consists of clients, credit grantors, governments, employers, investors, the business and financial community, and others who rely on the objectivity and integrity of members to maintain the orderly functioning of commerce. This reliance imposes a public interest responsibility on members. The public interest is defined as the collective well-being of the community of people and institutions that the profession serves.

0.03 In discharging their professional responsibilities, members may encounter conflicting pressures from each of those groups. In resolving those conflicts, members should act with integrity, guided by the precept that when members fulfill their responsibility to the public, clients’ and employers’ interests are best served.

0.04 Those who rely on members expect them to discharge their responsibilities with integrity, objectivity, due professional care, and a genuine interest in serving the public. They are expected to provide quality services, enter into fee arrangements, and offer a range of services—all in a manner that demonstrates a level of professionalism consistent with these Principles of the Code of Professional Conduct.
All who accept membership in the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants commit themselves to honor the public trust. In return for the faith that the public reposes in them, members should seek to continually demonstrate their dedication to professional excellence. [Prior reference: ET section 53]

0.300.040 Integrity

0.01 Integrity principle. To maintain and broaden public confidence, members should perform all professional responsibilities with the highest sense of integrity.

0.02 Integrity is an element of character fundamental to professional recognition. It is the quality from which the public trust derives and the benchmark against which a member must ultimately test all decisions.

0.03 Integrity requires a member to be, among other things, honest and candid within the constraints of client confidentiality. Service and the public trust should not be subordinated to personal gain and advantage. Integrity can accommodate the inadvertent error and honest difference of opinion; it cannot accommodate deceit or subordination of principle.

0.04 Integrity is measured in terms of what is right and just. In the absence of specific rules, standards, or guidance or in the face of conflicting opinions, a member should test decisions and deeds by asking: “Am I doing what a person of integrity would do? Have I retained my integrity?” Integrity requires a member to observe both the form and the spirit of technical and ethical standards; circumvention of those standards constitutes subordination of judgment.

0.05 Integrity also requires a member to observe the principles of objectivity and independence and of due care. [Prior reference: ET section 54]

0.300.050 Objectivity and Independence

0.01 Objectivity and independence principle. A member should maintain objectivity and be free of conflicts of interest in discharging professional responsibilities. A member in public practice should be independent in fact and appearance when providing auditing and other attestation services.

0.02 Objectivity is a state of mind, a quality that lends value to a member’s services. It is a distinguishing feature of the profession. The principle of objectivity imposes the obligation to be impartial, intellectually honest, and free of conflicts of interest. Independence precludes relationships that may appear to impair a member’s objectivity in rendering attestation services.

0.03 Members often serve multiple interests in many different capacities and must demonstrate their objectivity in varying circumstances. Members in public practice render attest, tax, and management advisory services. Other members prepare financial statements in the employment of others, perform internal auditing services, and serve in financial and management capacities in industry, education, and government. They also educate and train those who aspire to admission into the profession. Regardless of service or capacity, members should protect the integrity of their work, maintain objectivity, and avoid any subordination of their judgment.

0.04 For a member in public practice, the maintenance of objectivity and independence requires a continuing assessment of client relationships and public responsibility. Such a member who provides auditing and other attestation services should be independent in fact and appearance. In providing all other services, a member should maintain objectivity and avoid conflicts of interest.

0.05 Although members not in public practice cannot maintain the appearance of independence, they nevertheless have the responsibility to maintain objectivity in rendering professional services. Members employed by others to prepare financial statements or to perform auditing, tax, or consulting services are charged with the same responsibility for objectivity as members in public practice and must be scrupulous in their application of generally accepted accounting principles and candid in all their dealings with members in public practice. [Prior reference: ET section 55]
0.300.060 Due Care

.01 Due care principle. A member should observe the profession’s technical and ethical standards, strive continually to improve competence and the quality of services, and discharge professional responsibility to the best of the member’s ability.

.02 The quest for excellence is the essence of due care. Due care requires a member to discharge professional responsibilities with competence and diligence. It imposes the obligation to perform professional services to the best of a member’s ability, with concern for the best interest of those for whom the services are performed, and consistent with the profession’s responsibility to the public.

.03 Competence is derived from a synthesis of education and experience. It begins with a mastery of the common body of knowledge required for designation as a certified public accountant. The maintenance of competence requires a commitment to learning and professional improvement that must continue throughout a member’s professional life. It is a member’s individual responsibility. In all engagements and in all responsibilities, each member should undertake to achieve a level of competence that will assure that the quality of the member’s services meets the high level of professionalism required by these Principles.

.04 Competence represents the attainment and maintenance of a level of understanding and knowledge that enables a member to render services with facility and acumen. It also establishes the limitations of a member’s capabilities by dictating that consultation or referral may be required when a professional engagement exceeds the personal competence of a member or a member’s firm. Each member is responsible for assessing his or her own competence of evaluating whether education, experience, and judgment are adequate for the responsibility to be assumed.

.05 Members should be diligent in discharging responsibilities to clients, employers, and the public. Diligence imposes the responsibility to render services promptly and carefully, to be thorough, and to observe applicable technical and ethical standards.

.06 Due care requires a member to plan and supervise adequately any professional activity for which he or she is responsible. [Prior reference: ET section 56]

0.300.070 Scope and Nature of Services

.01 Scope and nature of services principle. A member in public practice should observe the Principles of the Code of Professional Conduct in determining the scope and nature of services to be provided.

.02 The public interest aspect of members’ services requires that such services be consistent with acceptable professional behavior for members. Integrity requires that service and the public trust not be subordinated to personal gain and advantage. Objectivity and independence require that members be free from conflicts of interest in discharging professional responsibilities. Due care requires that services be provided with competence and diligence.

.03 Each of these Principles should be considered by members in determining whether or not to provide specific services in individual circumstances. In some instances, they may represent an overall constraint on the nonaudit services that might be offered to a specific client. No hard-and-fast rules can be developed to help members reach these judgments, but they must be satisfied that they are meeting the spirit of the Principles in this regard.

.04 In order to accomplish this, members should

   a. Practice in firms that have in place internal quality control procedures to ensure that services are competently delivered and adequately supervised.

   b. Determine, in their individual judgments, whether the scope and nature of other services provided to an audit client would create a conflict of interest in the performance of the audit function for that client.
c. Assess, in their individual judgments, whether an activity is consistent with their role as professionals. [Prior reference: ET section 57]

0.400 Definitions

Pursuant to its authority under the bylaws (paragraph .01 [3.6.2.2] of BL section 360, Committees [AICPA, Professional Standards]) to interpret the code, the Professional Ethics Executive Committee has issued the following definitions of terms appearing in the code.

.01 **Acceptable level.** In connection with independence, an acceptable level is a level at which a reasonable and informed third party who is aware of the relevant information would be expected to conclude that a member’s independence is not impaired. When used in connection with any rule but the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] an acceptable level is a level at which a reasonable and informed third party who is aware of the relevant information would be expected to conclude that a member’s compliance with the rules is not compromised. [Prior reference: ET section 100-1 and new content]

**Effective Date**

When this definition is used in connection with any rule but the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] it is effective December 15, 2014.

.02 **Affiliate.** The following entities are affiliates of a financial statement attest client:

a. An entity (for example, subsidiary, partnership, or limited liability company [LLC]) that a financial statement attest client can control.

b. An entity in which a financial statement attest client or an entity controlled by the financial statement attest client has a direct financial interest that gives the financial statement attest client significant influence over such entity and that is material to the financial statement attest client.

c. An entity (for example, parent, partnership, or LLC) that controls a financial statement attest client when the financial statement attest client is material to such entity.

d. An entity with a direct financial interest in the financial statement attest client when that entity has significant influence over the financial statement attest client, and the interest in the financial statement attest client is material to such entity.

e. A sister entity of a financial statement attest client if the financial statement attest client and sister entity are each material to the entity that controls both.

f. A trustee that is deemed to control a trust financial statement attest client that is not an investment company.

g. The sponsor of a single employer employee benefit plan financial statement attest client.

h. Any entity, such as a union, participating employer, or a group association of employers, that has significant influence over a multiemployer employee benefit plan financial statement attest client and the plan is material to such entity.

i. The participating employer that is the plan administrator of a multiple employer employee benefit plan financial statement attest client.

j. A single or multiple employer employee benefit plan sponsored by either a financial statement attest client or an entity controlled by the financial statement attest client. All participating employers of a multiple employer employee benefit plan are considered sponsors of the plan.
Preface: Applicable to All Members

k. A multiemployer employee benefit plan when a financial statement attest client or entity controlled by the financial statement attest client has significant influence over the plan and the plan is material to the financial statement attest client.

l. An investment adviser, a general partner, or a trustee of an investment company financial statement attest client (fund) if the fund is material to the investment adviser, general partner, or trustee that is deemed to have either control or significant influence over the fund. When considering materiality, members should consider investments in, and fees received from, the fund.

See the “State and Local Government Client Affiliates” interpretation [1.224.020] for guidance related to identifying affiliates of a financial statement attest client that is a state and local government. [Prior reference: paragraph .20 of ET section 101]

[See Revision History Table.]


.03 Attest client. A person or entity with respect to which an attest engagement is performed. [No prior reference: new content]

If the person or entity that engages a member or member’s firm (member) to perform professional services (engaging entity) is not also the attest client, the member should refer to the “Client Affiliate” interpretation [1.224.010] to determine whether the engaging entity is an affiliate from which the member should be independent. However, because threats to the member’s compliance with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] and the “Conflicts of Interest for Members in Public Practice” interpretation [1.110.010] may still exist with respect to the engaging entity, members should comply with this rule and interpretation.

See paragraph .06 of the “Client Affiliate” interpretation [1.224.010] for acquisitions and business combinations that involve a financial statement attest client.

See paragraph .03 of the “Simultaneous Employment or Association With an Attest Client” interpretation [1.275.005] for independence guidance related to a member in a government audit organization that performs an attest engagement with respect to the government entity.

Effective Date

This definition is effective December 15, 2014.

[See Revision History Table.]

.04 Attest engagement. An engagement that requires independence, as set forth in the AICPA Statements on Auditing Standards (SASs), Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services (SSARSs), and Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements (SSAEs). [Prior reference: paragraph .01 of ET section 92]

.05 Attest engagement team. Those individuals participating in the attest engagement, including those who perform concurring and engagement quality reviews. The attest engagement team includes all employees and contractors retained by the firm who participate in the attest engagement, regardless of their functional classification (for example, audit, tax, or management consulting services). The attest engagement team
excludes specialists, as discussed in AU-C section 620, Using the Work of an Auditor's Specialist (AICPA, Professional Standards), and individuals who perform only routine clerical functions, such as word processing and photocopying. [Prior reference: paragraph .02 of ET section 92]

.06 Beneficially owned, beneficial ownership interest. Describes a financial interest providing an individual or entity the right to some or all of the underlying benefits of ownership. These benefits include the authority to direct the voting or disposition of the interest or to receive the economic benefits of the ownership of the interest. [Prior reference: paragraph .17 of ET section 101]

[See Revision History Table.]

.07 Client. Any person or entity, other than the member’s employer that engages a member or member’s firm to perform professional services (engaging entity) and also, a person or entity with respect to which a member or member’s firm performs professional services (subject entity). When the engaging entity and the subject entity are different, while there is only one engagement, they are separate clients.

[Prior reference: paragraph .03 of ET section 92]

See paragraph .03 of the “Simultaneous Employment or Association With an Attest Client” interpretation [1.275.005] for independence guidance related to a member in a government audit organization that performs an attest engagement with respect to the government entity.

[See Revision History Table.]

.08 Close relative. A parent, sibling, or nondependent child. [Prior reference: paragraph .04 of ET section 92]

.09 Confidential client information. Any information obtained from the client that is not available to the public. Information that is available to the public includes, but is not limited to, information

a. in a book, periodical, newspaper, or similar publication;

b. in a client document that has been released by the client to the public or that has otherwise become a matter of public knowledge;

c. on publicly accessible websites, databases, online discussion forums, or other electronic media by which members of the public can access the information;

d. released or disclosed by the client or other third parties in media interviews, speeches, testimony in a public forum, presentations made at seminars or trade association meetings, panel discussions, earnings press release calls, investor calls, analyst sessions, investor conference presentations, or a similar public forum;

e. maintained by, or filed with, regulatory or governmental bodies that is available to the public; or

f. obtained from other public sources.

Unless the particular client information is available to the public, such information should be considered confidential client information. Members are advised that federal, state, or local statutes, rules, or regulations concerning confidentiality of client information may be more restrictive than the requirements in the code. [Prior reference: paragraph .05 of ET section 92]

.10 Control (s) (led). As used in FASB Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 810, Consolidation. When used in the “Client Affiliates” interpretation [1.224.010] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001], control depends upon the entity in question. For example, when used for not-for-profit entities, control is as used in FASB ASC 958-805-20; for commercial entities, control is as used in FASB

.11 Council. The AICPA Council. [Prior reference: paragraph .06 of ET section 92]

.12 Covered member. All of the following:

a. an individual on the attest engagement team.

b. an individual in a position to influence the attest engagement.

c. a partner, partner equivalent, or manager who provides 10 or more hours of nonattest services to the attest client within any fiscal year. Designation as covered member ends on the later of (i) the date that the firm signs the report on the financial statements for the fiscal year during which those services were provided or (ii) the date he or she no longer expects to provide 10 or more hours of nonattest services to the attest client on a recurring basis.

d. a partner or partner equivalent in the office in which the lead attest engagement partner or partner equivalent primarily practices in connection with the attest engagement.

e. the firm, including the firm’s employee benefit plans.

f. an entity whose operating, financial, or accounting policies can be controlled by any of the individuals or entities described in items a–e or two or more such individuals or entities if they act together. [Prior reference: paragraph .07 of ET section 92]

Effective Date

The addition of partner equivalents to this definition is effective for engagements covering periods beginning on or after December 15, 2014.

.13 Direct financial interest. A financial interest that is

a. owned directly by an individual or entity, including those managed on a discretionary basis by others.

b. under the control of an individual or entity, including those managed on a discretionary basis by others.

c. beneficially owned through an investment vehicle, estate, trust, or other intermediary when the beneficiary

i. controls the intermediary or

ii. has the authority to supervise or participate in the intermediary’s investment decisions.

When used in this definition, the term control includes situations in which the covered member has the ability to exercise such control, either individually or acting together with his or her firm or other partners or professional employees of his or her firm. [Prior reference: paragraph .17 of ET section 101]

.14 Employing organization. Any entity that employs the member or engages the member on a contractual or volunteer basis in an executive, a staff, a governance, an advisory, or an administrative capacity to provide professional services. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

This definition is effective December 15, 2014.
.15 **Financial interest.** An ownership interest in an equity or a debt security issued by an entity, including rights and obligations to acquire such an interest and derivatives directly related to such interest. [Prior reference: paragraph .17 of ET section 101]

.16 **Financial statement attest client.** An entity whose financial statements are audited, reviewed, or compiled when the member’s compilation report does not disclose a lack of independence. [Prior reference: paragraph .20 of ET section 101]

.17 **Financial statements.** A presentation of financial data, including accompanying disclosures, if any, intended to communicate an entity’s economic resources or obligations, or both, at a point in time or the changes therein for a period of time, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. Incidental financial data to support recommendations to a client or in (a) documents for which the reporting is governed by SSAEs and (b) tax returns and supporting schedules do not, for this purpose, constitute financial statements. The statement, affidavit, or signature of preparers required on tax returns neither constitutes an opinion on financial statements nor requires a disclaimer of such opinion. [Prior reference: paragraph .10 of ET section 92]

.18 **Firm.** A form of organization permitted by law or regulation whose characteristics conform to resolutions of the Council and that is engaged in public practice. A firm includes the individual partners thereof, except for purposes of applying the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] and related interpretations. For purposes of applying the “Independence Rule,” a firm includes a network firm when the engagement is either a financial statement audit or review engagement and the audit or review report is not restricted, as set forth in the AICPA SASs and SSARSs (AICPA, Professional Standards). [Prior reference: paragraph .11 of ET section 92]

.19 **Immediate family.** A spouse, spousal equivalent, or dependent (regardless of whether the dependent is related). [Prior reference: paragraph .13 of ET section 92]

.20 **Impaired(ing).** In connection with independence, to effectively extinguish independence. When a member’s independence is impaired, the member is not independent. [Prior reference: paragraph .09 of ET section 100-1]

.21 **Independence.** Consists of two elements, defined as follows:

  a. Independence of mind is the state of mind that permits a member to perform an attest service without being affected by influences that compromise professional judgment, thereby allowing an individual to act with integrity and exercise objectivity and professional skepticism.

  b. Independence in appearance is the avoidance of circumstances that would cause a reasonable and informed third party who has knowledge of all relevant information, including the safeguards applied, to reasonably conclude that the integrity, objectivity, or professional skepticism of a firm or member of the attest engagement team is compromised.

This definition should not be interpreted as an absolute. For example, the phrase “without being affected by influences that compromise professional judgment” is not intended to convey that the member must be free of any and all influences that might compromise objective judgment. Instead, the member should determine whether such influences, if present, create a threat that is not at an acceptable level that a member would not act with integrity and exercise objectivity and professional skepticism in the conduct of a particular engagement or would be perceived as not being able to do so by a reasonable and informed third party with knowledge of all relevant information. [Prior reference: paragraphs .06–.08 of ET section 100-1]

.22 **Indirect financial interest.** A financial interest beneficially owned through an investment vehicle, an estate, a trust, or an other intermediary when the beneficiary neither controls the intermediary nor has the authority to supervise or participate in the intermediary’s investment decisions. When used in this definition, control includes situations in which the covered member has the ability to exercise such control,
either individually or acting together with his or her firm or other partners or professional employees of
his or her firm. [Prior reference: paragraph .17 of ET section 101]

.23 Individual in a position to influence the attest engagement. One who

a. evaluates the performance or recommends the compensation of the attest engagement partner;

b. directly supervises or manages the attest engagement partner, including all successively senior
levels above that individual through the firm’s chief executive;

c. consults with the attest engagement team regarding technical or industry-related issues specific to
the attest engagement; or

d. participates in or oversees, at all successively senior levels, quality control activities, including
internal monitoring, with respect to the specific attest engagement.

[Prior reference: paragraph .14 of ET section 92]

.24 Institute. The AICPA. [Prior reference: paragraph .15 of ET section 92]

.25 Interpretation. Pronouncements issued by the division of professional ethics to provide guidelines
concerning the scope and application of the rules of conduct. [Prior reference: paragraph .16 of ET section
92]

.26 Joint closely held investment. An investment in an entity or a property by the member and the attest client
(or the attest client’s officers or directors or any owner who has the ability to exercise significant influence
over the attest client) that enables them to control the entity or property. [Prior reference: paragraph .17
of ET section 92]

[See Revision History Table.]

.27 Key position. A position in which an individual has

a. primary responsibility for significant accounting functions that support material components of the
financial statements;

b. primary responsibility for the preparation of the financial statements; or

c. the ability to exercise influence over the contents of the financial statements, including when the
individual is a member of the board of directors or similar governing body, chief executive officer,
president, chief financial officer, chief operating officer, general counsel, chief accounting officer,
controller, director of internal audit, director of financial reporting, treasurer, or any equivalent
position.

For purposes of attest engagements not involving financial statements, a key position is one in which an
individual is primarily responsible for, or able to influence, the subject matter of the attest engagement, as
previously described. [Prior reference: paragraph .18 of ET section 92]

[See Revision History Table.]

.28 Lending institution. An entity that, as part of its normal business operations, makes loans. This definition
is not meant to include an organization that might schedule payment for services for a client over a
period of time. Examples of such entities are banks, credit unions, certain retailers, and insurance and
finance companies. For example, for automobile leases addressed by the “Loans and Leases With Lending
Institutions” interpretation [1.260.020] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001], an entity is considered
a lending institution if it leases automobiles as part of its normal business operations. [Prior reference: paragraph .09 of ET section 92]

Effective Date

This revised definition is effective December 15, 2014.

.29 Loan. A contractual obligation to pay or right to receive money on demand or on a fixed or determinable date and includes a stated or implied rate of return to the lender. For purposes of this definition, loans include, among other things, a guarantee of a loan, a letter of credit, a line of credit, or a loan commitment. However, for purposes of this definition, a loan would not include debt securities (which are considered a financial interest) or lease arrangements. [Prior reference: paragraph .19 of ET section 92]

Effective Date

This revised definition is effective December 15, 2014.

.30 Manager. A professional employee of the firm who has continuing responsibility for the planning and supervision of engagements for specified clients. [Prior reference: paragraph .20 of ET section 92]

.31 Member. A member, associate member, affiliate member, or international associate of the AICPA. When the term member is used in part 1 of the code, it means a member in public practice; when used in part 2 of the code, it means a member in business; and when used in part 3 of the code, it means all other members. [Prior reference: paragraph .21 of ET section 92]

.32 Member(s) in business. A member who is employed or engaged on a contractual or volunteer basis in an executive, staff, governance, advisory, or administrative capacity in such areas as industry, the public sector, education, the not-for-profit sector, and regulatory or professional bodies. This does not include a member engaged in public practice. [Prior reference: paragraph .22 of ET section 92]

.33 Network. For purposes of the “Network and Network Firms” interpretation [1.220.010] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001], a network is an association of entities that includes one or more firms that (a) cooperate for the purpose of enhancing the firms’ capabilities to provide professional services and (b) share one or more of the following characteristics:

a. The use of a common brand name, including common initials, as part of the firm name

b. Common control among the firms through ownership, management, or other means

c. Profits or costs, excluding costs of operating the association; costs of developing audit methodologies, manuals, and training courses; and other costs that are immaterial to the firm

d. A common business strategy that involves ongoing collaboration amongst the firms whereby the firms are responsible for implementing the association’s strategy and are held accountable for performance pursuant to that strategy

e. A significant part of professional resources

f. Common quality control policies and procedures that firms are required to implement and that are monitored by the association

A network may comprise a subset of entities within an association only if that subset of entities cooperates and shares one or more of the characteristics set forth in the preceding list. [Prior reference: paragraph .23 of ET section 92]

.34 Network firm. A firm or other entity that belongs to a network. This includes any entity (including another firm) that the network firm, by itself or through one or more of its owners, controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with. [Prior reference: paragraph .24 of ET section 92]
Normal lending procedures, terms, and requirements. In connection with a covered member’s loan from a lending institution, lending procedures, terms, and requirements that are reasonably comparable with those relating to loans of a similar character committed to other borrowers during the period in which the loan to the covered member is committed. Accordingly, in making such comparison and evaluating whether a loan was made under normal lending procedures, terms, and requirements, the covered member should consider all the circumstances under which the loan was granted, including the following:

a. The amount of the loan in relation to the value of the collateral pledged as security and the credit standing of the covered member

b. Repayment terms

c. Interest rate, including points

d. Closing costs

e. General availability of such loans to the public

Related prohibitions that may be more restrictive are prescribed by certain state and federal agencies having regulatory authority over such lending institutions. Broker-dealers, for example, are subject to regulation by the SEC. [Prior reference: paragraph .25 of ET section 92]

Office. A reasonably distinct subgroup within a firm, whether constituted by formal organization or informal practice, in which personnel who make up the subgroup generally serve the same group of clients or work on the same categories of matters. Substance should govern the office classification. For example, the expected regular personnel interactions and assigned reporting channels of an individual may well be more important than an individual’s physical location. [Prior reference: paragraph .26 of ET section 92]

Partner. A proprietor, a shareholder, an equity or a nonequity partner, or any individual who assumes the risks and benefits of firm ownership or is otherwise held out by the firm to be the equivalent of any of the aforementioned. [Prior reference: paragraph .27 of ET section 92]

Partner equivalent. A professional employee who is not a partner of the firm but who either

a. has the ultimate responsibility for the conduct of an attest engagement, including the authority to sign or affix the firm’s name to an attest report or issue, or authorize others to issue, an attest report on behalf of the firm without partner approval; or

b. has the authority to bind the firm to conduct an attest engagement without partner approval. For example, the professional employee has the authority to sign or affix the firm’s name to an attest engagement letter or contract to conduct an attest engagement without partner approval.

Firms may use different titles to refer to professional employees with this authority, although a title is not determinative of a partner equivalent. For purposes of this definition, partner approval does not include any partner approvals that are part of the firm’s normal approval and quality control review procedures applicable to a partner.

This definition is solely for the purpose of applying the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] and its interpretations and should not be used or relied upon in any other context, including the determination of whether the partner equivalent is an owner of the firm. [Prior reference: paragraph .28 of ET section 92.]

Effective Date

This definition is effective for engagements covering periods beginning on or after December 15, 2014.

Period of the professional engagement. The period begins when a member either signs an initial engagement letter or other agreement to perform attest services or begins to perform an attest engagement,
whichever is earlier. The period lasts for the entire duration of the professional relationship, which could cover many periods, and ends with the formal or informal notification, either by the member or client, of the termination of the professional relationship or by the issuance of a report, whichever is later. Accordingly, the period does not end with the issuance of a report and recommence with the beginning of the following year’s attest engagement. [Prior reference: paragraph .29 of ET section 92]

[See Revision History Table.]

.40 Professional services. Include all services requiring accountancy or related skills that are performed by a member for a client, an employer, or on a volunteer basis. These services include, but are not limited to accounting, audit and other attest services, tax, bookkeeping, management consulting, financial management, corporate governance, personal financial planning, business valuation, litigation support, educational, and those services for which standards are promulgated by bodies designated by Council. [Prior reference: paragraph .31 of ET section 92]

.41 Public interest entities. All of the following:

a. All listed entities, including entities that are outside the United States whose shares, stock, or debt are quoted or listed on a recognized stock exchange or marketed under the regulations of a recognized stock exchange or other equivalent body.

b. Any entity for which an audit is required by regulation or legislation to be conducted in compliance with the same independence requirements that apply to an audit of listed entities (for example, requirements of the SEC, the PCAOB, or other similar regulators or standard setters).

Members may wish to consider whether additional entities should also be treated as public interest entities because they have a large number and wide range of stakeholders. Factors to be considered may include

• the nature of the business, such as the holding of assets in a fiduciary capacity for a large number of stakeholders;

• size; and

• number of employees.

Members should refer to the independence regulations of applicable authoritative regulatory bodies when a member performs attest services and is required to be independent of the attest client under such regulations. [Prior reference: paragraph .20 of ET section 100-1]

[See Revision History Table.]

.42 Public practice. Consists of the performance of professional services for a client by a member or member’s firm. [Prior reference: paragraph .30 of ET section 92]

.43 Safeguards. Actions or other measures that may eliminate a threat or reduce a threat to an acceptable level. [Prior reference: paragraph .20 of ET section 100-1]

.44 Share-based compensation arrangements. As defined in the FASB ASC glossary under the term share-based payment arrangements. [Prior reference: paragraph .02 ET section 101]

.45 Significant influence. As defined in FASB ASC 323-10-15. [Prior reference: paragraph .32 of ET section 92]

.46 Source documents. The documents upon which evidence of an accounting transaction are initially recorded. Source documents are often followed by the creation of many additional records and reports that
do not, however, qualify as initial recordings. Examples of source documents are purchase orders, payroll
time cards, and customer orders. [Prior reference: footnote 17 in paragraph .05 of ET section 101]

.47 Third-party service provider. All of the following:

a. An entity that the member does not control, individually or collectively with his or her firm or with
members of his or her firm.

b. An individual not employed by the member who assists the member in providing professional
services to clients (for example, bookkeeping, tax return preparation, consulting, or attest services,
section 191, .023–.024 of ET section 291, and .001–.002 of ET section 391]

.48 Those charged with governance. The person(s) or organization(s) (for example, a corporate trustee)
with responsibility for overseeing the strategic direction of the entity and the obligations related to the
accountability of the entity. This includes overseeing the financial reporting process. Those charged with
governance may include management personnel (for example, executive members of a governance board
or an owner-manager).

When an interpretation requires communicating with those charged with governance, the member should
determine the appropriate person(s) within the entity's governance structure with whom to communica,
based on the nature and importance of the particular circumstances and matter to be communicated. If
the member communicates with a subgroup of those charged with governance (for example, an audit
committee or an individual), the member should determine whether communication with all of those
charged with governance is also necessary, so that they are adequately informed. [Prior reference:
paragraph .33 of ET section 92]

Effective Date

This definition is effective April 30, 2014.

.49 Threat(s). In connection with independence, threats are relationships or circumstances that could
impair independence. In connection with any rule but the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001], threats
are relationships or circumstances that could compromise a member’s compliance with the rules. [Prior
reference: paragraph .10 of ET section 100-1]

Effective Date

When this definition is used in connection with any rule but the “Independence Rule” it is effective
December 15, 2014.

0.500 Nonauthoritative Guidance

.01 The code is the only authoritative source of AICPA ethics rules and interpretations. The staff of the
Professional Ethics Division has issued nonauthoritative guidance to assist members and others in their
implementation of the code. Such guidance does not amend or override the code. Further, the guidance
is not meant to be exhaustive and does not establish best practices, set standards, or serve as official
pronouncements of the AICPA. These documents were not approved in accordance with normal due
process, which requires proposed changes to be exposed to the public and requires consideration of
members’ and others’ comments.

.02 References to relevant nonauthoritative guidance, when available, are provided throughout the code in
boxed text at the end of the applicable interpretation. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.03 Effective December 15, 2014.
0.600 New, Revised, and Pending Interpretations and Other Guidance

0.600.010 New and Revised Interpretations and Other Guidance

.01 Periodically, new or revised authoritative ethics interpretations and other guidance are issued. Publication of the text of a new or revised pronouncement or a notice with a link to the text of a new or revised authoritative interpretation and other guidance in the *Journal of Accountancy* constitutes notice to members. Hence, the effective date of the interpretation and other guidance is the last day of the month in which the pronouncement or notice is published in the *Journal of Accountancy*, unless otherwise noted. The Professional Ethics Division takes into consideration the time that would have been reasonable for the member to comply with the pronouncement. This section lists the citation and title of any new or revised interpretation or other guidance for a period of 12 months after its effective date. When an interpretation or other guidance is not yet effective, it will appear as a pending interpretation or other guidance (see “Pending Interpretations and Other Guidance” [0.600.020]).

- Temporary Enforcement Policies [0.600.030.03] (Added December 21, 2021. Effective November 16, 2021.)
- Staff Augmentation Arrangements [1.275.007] (Added March 2021. Effective November 30, 2021.)
- Client Affiliates [1.224.010] (Revised March 2021. Effective November 30, 2021.)
- Scope and Applicability of Nonattest Services [1.295.010] (Revised March 2021. Effective November 30, 2021.)
- Records Requests [1.400.200] (Revised March 2021. Effective July 31, 2021.)
- "Ethical Conflicts" [1.000.020 and 2.000.020] (Revised May 2022. Effective June 30, 2023. Early implementation permitted.)
- Definition of "beneficially owned" [0.400.06] (Revised May 2022. Effective December 31, 2022. Early implementation permitted.)
Preface: Applicable to All Members


**Effective Date**

.02 Paragraph .01, excluding the bulleted text, is effective December 15, 2014.

**0.600.020 Pending Interpretations and Other Guidance**

.01 Periodically, new or revised authoritative ethics interpretations and other guidance are issued. This section lists the titles and citations of any pending new or revised interpretations or other guidance until they are effective and notes whether early application is permitted or encouraged. Once the interpretation or other guidance becomes effective, it will appear under the “New and Revised Interpretation and Other Guidance” section of the preface [0.600.010].


- "Ethical Conflicts" [1.000.020 and 2.000.020] (Revised May 2022. Effective December 15, 2014.)


- Definition of "beneficially owned" [0.400.06] (Revised May 2022. Effective December 31, 2022. Early implementation permitted.)


- “Offering or Accepting Gifts or Entertainment” [1.120.010] (Revised August 2022. Effective December 31, 2022. Early implementation permitted.)
• “Offering or Accepting Gifts or Entertainment” [1.285.010] (Revised August 2022. Effective December 31, 2022. Early implementation permitted.)

Effective Date

0.600.030 Temporary Enforcement Policies

0.01 Periodically the Professional Ethics Executive Committee (PEEC) may publicly agree not to take enforcement action in certain circumstances and may issue a temporary enforcement policy. This section sets forth any temporary enforcement policies that are in effect.

0.02 Temporary Policy Statement of the AICPA Professional Ethics Executive Committee Related to Amendments of Rule 2-01 of Regulation S-X.

On October 16, 2020, the SEC announced that it adopted final amendments to certain auditor independence requirements in Rule 2-01 of Regulation S-X (SEC amendments). The SEC amendments will be effective on June 9, 2021, with early adoption permitted. PEEC has agreed to evaluate the SEC amendments and determine if any revisions should be made to the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct (code) in light of the SEC amendments. While this evaluation is underway, PEEC will consider a member to be in compliance with the code if the member implements and complies with the SEC amendments or complies with the existing code. This temporary enforcement policy will be effective until PEEC rescinds it. [Adopted December 21, 2020.]

0.03 Temporary policy statement of the AICPA Professional Ethics Executive Committee related to simultaneous employment or association with an attest client and the Uniformed Services Employment and Reemployment Rights Act (USERRA) and parallel state statutes.

USERRA and parallel state statutes provide certain employment protections to individuals who serve, may serve, or have served in the armed services. On November 16, 2021, PEEC agreed it will consider a member or member’s firm to be in compliance with the code if the member or member’s firm employs individuals who serve in federal or state armed services and provides attest services to the armed services, as long as the individual is not in a key position with the armed services attest client, is not in a position to influence the attest engagement and is not on the attest engagement team. This temporary enforcement policy will be effective until PEEC rescinds it. [Adopted November 16, 2021]

Effective Date

0.04 Paragraph .01 is effective December 21, 2020.

[See Revision History Table.]

0.700 Deleted Interpretations and Other Guidance

0.01 The following interpretations and other guidance were deleted from the code during the 10 years prior to the 2014 edition:

• Definition of holding out (ET sec. 92 par. .12) (Deleted March 2013, effective May 31, 2013)

• Ethics Ruling No. 65, “Use of the CPA Designation by Member Not in Public Practice” (ET sec. 191 par. .130) (Deleted March 2013, effective May 31, 2013)

• Ethics Ruling No. 38, “CPA Title, Controller of Bank” (ET sec. 591 par. .075–.076) (Deleted March 2013, effective May 31, 2013)
• Ethics Ruling No. 78, “Letterhead: Lawyer-CPA” (ET sec. 591 par. .155–.156) (Deleted March 2013, effective May 31, 2013)

• Ethics Ruling No. 134, “Association of Accountants Not Partners” (ET sec. 591 par. .267–.268) (Deleted August 2012)

• Ethics Ruling No. 74, “Audits, Reviews, or Compilations and a Lack of Independence” (ET sec. 191 par. .148–.149) (Deleted April 2012).

• Ethics Ruling No. 135, “Association of Firms Not Partners” (ET sec. 591 par. .269–.270) (Deleted April 2012).


• Ethics Ruling No. 9, “Member as Representative of Creditor’s Committee” (ET sec. 191 par. .017–.018) (Deleted November 2011)

• Ethics Ruling No. 10, “Member as Legislator” (ET sec. 191 par. .019–.020) (Deleted November 2011)

• Ethics Ruling No. 12, “Member as Trustee of Charitable Foundation” (ET sec. 191 par. .023–.024) (Deleted November 2011)

• Ethics Ruling No. 16, “Member on Board of Directors of Nonprofit Social Club” (ET sec. 191 par. .031–.032) (Deleted November 2011)

• Ethics Ruling No. 19, “Member on Deferred Compensation Committee” (ET sec. 191 par. .037–.038) (Deleted November 2011)

• Ethics Ruling No. 21, “Member as Director and Auditor of an Entity’s Profit Sharing and Retirement Trust” (ET sec. 191 par. .041–.042) (Deleted November 2011. Reestablished and effective October 31, 2012 until the earlier of January 1, 2014, or adoption of Interpretation 101-18)

• Ethics Ruling No. 29, “Member as Bondholder” (ET sec. 191 par. .057–.058) (Deleted November 2011)

• Ethics Ruling No. 38, “Member as Co-Fiduciary With Client Bank” (ET sec. 191 par. .075–.076) (Deleted November 2011. Reestablished and effective October 31, 2012 until the earlier of January 1, 2014, or adoption of Interpretation 101-18)

• Ethics Ruling No. 48, “Faculty Member as Auditor of a Student Fund” (ET sec. 191 par. .095–.096) (Deleted November 2011)


• Ethics Ruling No. 69, “Investment With a General Partner” (ET sec. 191 par. .138–.139) (Deleted November 2011. Reestablished and effective October 31, 2012 until the earlier of January 1, 2014, or adoption of Interpretation 101-18)

• Ethics Ruling No. 81, “Member’s Investment in a Limited Partnership” (ET sec. 191 par. .162–.163) (Deleted November 2011. Reestablished and effective October 31, 2012 until the earlier of January 1, 2014, or adoption of Interpretation 101-18)
• Ethics Ruling No. 98, “Member’s Loan From a Nonclient Subsidiary or Parent of an Attest Client” (ET sec. 191 par. .196–.197) (Deleted November 2011. Reestablished and effective October 31, 2012 until the earlier of January 1, 2014, or adoption of Interpretation 101-18)

• Ethics Ruling No. 103, “Attest Report on Internal Controls” (ET sec. 191 par. .206–.207) (Deleted November 2011)

• Ethics Ruling No. 106, “Member Has Significant Influence Over an Entity That Has Significant Influence Over a Client” (ET sec. 191 par. .212–.213) (Deleted November 2011. Reestablished and effective October 31, 2012 until the earlier of January 1, 2014, or adoption of Interpretation 101-18)

• Ethics Ruling No. 111, “Employee Benefit Plan Sponsored by Client” (ET sec. 191 par. .222–.223) (Deleted November 2011. Reestablished and effective October 31, 2012 until the earlier of January 1, 2014, or adoption of Interpretation 101-18)

• Ethics Ruling No. 11, “Applicability of Rule 203 to Members Performing Litigation Support Services” (ET sec. 291 par. .021–.022) (Deleted November 2011)

• Ethics Ruling No. 2, “Fees: Collection of Notes Issued in Payment” (ET sec. 591 par. .003–.004) (Deleted November 2011)

• Ethics Ruling No. 33, “Course Instructor” (ET sec. 591 par. .065–.066) (Deleted November 2011)

• Ethics Ruling No. 108, “Member Interviewed by the Press” (ET sec. 591 par. .215–.216) (Deleted November 2011)

• Ethics Ruling No. 117, “Consumer Credit Company Director” (ET sec. 591 par. .233–.234) (Deleted November 2011)

• Ethics Ruling No. 140, “Political Election” (ET sec. 591 par. .279–.280) (Deleted November 2011)

• Ethics Ruling No. 144, “Title: Partnership Roster” (ET sec. 591 par. .287–.288) (Deleted November 2011)

• Ethics Ruling No. 176, “Member’s Association With Newsletters and Publications” (ET sec. 591 par. .351–.352) (Deleted November 2011)

• Ethics Ruling No. 177, “Data Processing: Billing Services” (ET sec. 591 par. .353–.354) (Deleted November 2011)

• Ethics Ruling No. 179, “Practice of Public Accounting Under Name of Association or Group” (ET sec. 591 par. .357–.358) (Deleted November 2011)


• Ethics Ruling No. 182, “Termination of Engagement Prior to Completion” (ET sec. 591 par. .363–.364) (Deleted April 2006).

• Ethics Ruling No. 1, “Acceptance of a Gift” (ET sec. 191 par. .001–.002) (Deleted January 2006).

• Ethics Ruling No. 35, “Stockholder in Mutual Funds” (ET sec. 191 par. .069–.070) (Deleted December 2005).

• Ethics Ruling No. 36, “Participant in Investment Club” (ET sec. 191 par. .071–.072) (Deleted December 2005).
• Ethics Ruling No. 79, “Member’s Investment in a Partnership That Invests in Client” (ET sec. 191 par. .158–.159) (Deleted December 2005).

• Ethics Ruling No. 109, “Member’s Investment in Financial Services Products that Invest in Clients” (ET sec. 191 par. .218–.219) (Deleted December 2005).

• Ethics Ruling No. 66, “Member’s Retirement or Savings Plan Has Financial Interest in Client” (ET sec. 191 par. .132–.133) (Deleted December 2005).

• Ethics Ruling No. 68, “Blind Trust” (ET sec. 191 par. .136–.137) (Deleted December 2005).

The content of these deleted standards is available in a nonauthoritative document at https://us.aicpa.org/InterestAreas/ProfessionalEthics/Community/DownloadableDocuments/Deletions.pdf.
Part 1

Members in Public Practice

1.000 Introduction

.01 Part 1 of the Code of Professional Conduct (the code) applies to members in public practice. Accordingly, when the term member is used in part 1 of the code, the requirements apply only to members in public practice. When a member in public practice is also a member in business (for example, serves as a member of an entity’s board of directors), the member should also consult part 2 of the code, which applies to a member in business.

.02 Government auditors within a government audit organization who audit federal, state, or local governments or component units thereof, that are structurally located within the government audit organization, are considered in public practice with respect to those entities provided the head of the government audit organization meets at least one of the following criteria:

a. Is directly elected by voters of the government entity with respect to which attest engagements are performed

b. Is appointed by a legislative body and is subject to removal by a legislative body

c. Is appointed by someone other than the legislative body, as long as the appointment is confirmed by the legislative body and removal is subject to oversight or approval by the legislative body

[No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.03 Effective December 15, 2014.

[See Revision History Table.]

1.000.010 Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice

Introduction

.01 Members may encounter various relationships or circumstances that create threats to the member’s compliance with the rules. The rules and interpretations seek to address many situations; however, they cannot address all relationships or circumstances that may arise. Thus, in the absence of an interpretation that addresses a particular relationship or circumstance, a member should evaluate whether that relationship or circumstance would lead a reasonable and informed third party who is aware of the relevant information to conclude that there is a threat to the member’s compliance with the rules that is not at an acceptable level. When making that evaluation, the member should apply the conceptual framework approach as outlined in this interpretation.

.02 The code specifies that in some circumstances no safeguards can reduce a threat to an acceptable level. For example, the code specifies that a member may not subordinate the member's professional judgment to others without violating the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001]. A member may not use the conceptual framework to overcome this prohibition or any other prohibition or requirement in the code.

.03 The “Conceptual Framework for Independence” interpretation [1.210.010] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] provides authoritative guidance that members should use when making decisions on independence matters that are not explicitly addressed by the “Independence Rule” and its interpretations.

Definitions Used in Applying the Conceptual Framework
.04 **Acceptable level.** A level at which a reasonable and informed third party who is aware of the relevant information would be expected to conclude that a member’s compliance with the rules is not compromised.

.05 **Safeguards.** Actions or other measures that may eliminate a threat or reduce a threat to an acceptable level.

.06 **Threats.** Relationships or circumstances that could compromise a member’s compliance with the rules.

**Conceptual Framework Approach**

.07 Under the conceptual framework approach, members should identify threats to compliance with the rules and evaluate the significance of those threats. Members should evaluate identified threats both individually and in the aggregate because threats can have a cumulative effect on a member’s compliance with the rules. Members should perform three main steps in applying the conceptual framework approach:

a. **Identify threats.** The relationships or circumstances that a member encounters in various engagements and work assignments will often create different threats to complying with the rules. When a member encounters a relationship or circumstance that is not specifically addressed by a rule or an interpretation, under this approach, the member should determine whether the relationship or circumstance creates one or more threats, such as those identified in paragraphs .10–.16 that follow. The existence of a threat does not mean that the member is in violation of the rules; however, the member should evaluate the significance of the threat.

b. **Evaluate the significance of a threat.** In evaluating the significance of an identified threat, the member should determine whether a threat is at an acceptable level. A threat is at an acceptable level when a reasonable and informed third party who is aware of the relevant information would be expected to conclude that the threat would not compromise the member’s compliance with the rules. Members should consider both qualitative and quantitative factors when evaluating the significance of a threat, including the extent to which existing safeguards already reduce the threat to an acceptable level. If the member evaluates the threat and concludes that a reasonable and informed third party who is aware of the relevant information would be expected to conclude that the threat does not compromise a member’s compliance with the rules, the threat is at an acceptable level, and the member is not required to evaluate the threat any further under this conceptual framework approach.

c. **Identify and apply safeguards.** If, in evaluating the significance of an identified threat, the member concludes that the threat is not at an acceptable level, the member should apply safeguards to eliminate the threat or reduce it to an acceptable level. The member should apply judgment in determining the nature of the safeguards to be applied because the effectiveness of safeguards will vary, depending on the circumstances. When identifying appropriate safeguards to apply, one safeguard may eliminate or reduce multiple threats. In some cases, the member should apply multiple safeguards to eliminate or reduce one threat to an acceptable level. In other cases, an identified threat may be so significant that no safeguards will eliminate the threat or reduce it to an acceptable level, or the member will be unable to implement effective safeguards. Under such circumstances, providing the specific professional services would compromise the member’s compliance with the rules, and the member should determine whether to decline or discontinue the professional services or resign from the engagement.

**Threats**

.08 Many threats fall into one or more of the following seven broad categories: adverse interest, advocacy, familiarity, management participation, self-interest, self-review, and undue influence.

.09 Examples of threats associated with a specific relationship or circumstance are identified in the interpretations of the code. Paragraphs .10–.16 of this section define and provide examples, which are not all inclusive, of each of these threat categories.
.10 Adverse interest threat. The threat that a member will not act with objectivity because the member’s interests are opposed to the client’s interests. Examples of adverse interest threats include the following:

a. The client has expressed an intention to commence litigation against the member.

b. A client or officer, director, or significant shareholder of the client participates in litigation against the firm.

c. A subrogee asserts a claim against the firm for recovery of insurance payments made to the client.

d. A class action lawsuit is filed against the client and its officers and directors and the firm and its professional accountants.

.11 Advocacy threat. The threat that a member will promote a client’s interests or position to the point that his or her objectivity or independence is compromised. Examples of advocacy threats include the following:

a. A member provides forensic accounting services to a client in litigation or a dispute with third parties.

b. A firm acts as an investment adviser for an officer or director of a client with the ability to affect decision-making, or an individual with a beneficial ownership interest (known through reasonable inquiry) that gives the individual significant influence over the client.

c. A firm underwrites or promotes a client’s shares.

d. A firm acts as a registered agent for a client.

e. A member endorses a client’s services or products.

.12 Familiarity threat. The threat that, due to a long or close relationship with a client, a member will become too sympathetic to the client’s interests or too accepting of the client’s work or product. Examples of familiarity threats include the following:

a. A member’s immediate family or close relative is employed by the client.

b. A member’s close friend is employed by the client.

c. A former partner or professional employee joins the client in a key position and has knowledge of the firm’s policies and practices for the professional services engagement.

d. Senior personnel have a long association with a client.

e. A member has a significant close business relationship with an officer or a director of a client with the ability to affect decision-making, or an individual with a beneficial ownership interest (known through reasonable inquiry) that gives the individual significant influence over the client.

Nonauthoritative questions and answers regarding long association of senior personnel of the engagement team is available in the FAQ at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadeddocuments/ethics-general-faqs.pdf.

.13 Management participation threat. The threat that a member will take on the role of client management or otherwise assume management responsibilities, such may occur during an engagement to provide nonattest services.

.14 Self-interest threat. The threat that a member could benefit, financially or otherwise, from an interest in, or relationship with, a client or persons associated with the client. Examples of self-interest threats include the following:
a. The member has a financial interest in a client, and the outcome of a professional services engagement may affect the fair value of that financial interest.

b. The member’s spouse enters into employment negotiations with the client.

c. A firm enters into a contingent fee arrangement for a tax refund claim that is not a predetermined fee.

d. Excessive reliance exists on revenue from a single client.

.15 Self-review threat. The threat that a member will not appropriately evaluate the results of a previous judgment made or service performed or supervised by the member or an individual in the member’s firm and that the member will rely on that service in forming a judgment as part of another service. Examples of self-review threats include the following:

a. The member relies on the work product of the member’s firm.

b. The member performs bookkeeping services for a client.

c. A partner in the member’s office was associated with the client as an employee, an officer, a director, or a contractor.

.16 Undue influence threat. The threat that a member will subordinate his or her judgment to an individual associated with a client or any relevant third party due to that individual’s reputation or expertise, aggressive or dominant personality, or attempts to coerce or exercise excessive influence over the member. Examples of undue influence threats include the following:

a. The firm is threatened with dismissal from a client engagement.

b. The client indicates that it will not award additional engagements to the firm if the firm continues to disagree with the client on an accounting or tax matter.

c. An individual associated with a client or any relevant third party threatens to withdraw or terminate a professional service unless the member reaches certain judgments or conclusions.

Safeguards

.17 Safeguards may partially or completely eliminate a threat or diminish the potential influence of a threat. The nature and extent of the safeguards applied will depend on many factors. To be effective, safeguards should eliminate the threat or reduce it to an acceptable level.

.18 Safeguards that may eliminate a threat or reduce it to an acceptable level fall into three broad categories:

a. Safeguards created by the profession, legislation, or regulation.

b. Safeguards implemented by the client. It is not possible to rely solely on safeguards implemented by the client to eliminate or reduce significant threats to an acceptable level.

c. Safeguards implemented by the firm, including policies and procedures to implement professional and regulatory requirements.

.19 The effectiveness of a safeguard depends on many factors, including those listed here:

a. The facts and circumstances specific to a particular situation

b. The proper identification of threats

c. Whether the safeguard is suitably designed to meet its objectives
d. The party(ies) who will be subject to the safeguard

e. How the safeguard is applied

f. The consistency with which the safeguard is applied

g. Who applies the safeguard

h. How the safeguard interacts with a safeguard from another category

i. Whether the client is a public interest entity

Examples of safeguards within each category are presented in the following paragraphs. Because these are only examples and are not intended to be all inclusive, it is possible that threats may be sufficiently mitigated through the application of other safeguards not specifically identified herein.

The following are examples of safeguards created by the profession, legislation, or regulation:

a. Education and training requirements on independence and ethics rules

b. Continuing education requirements on independence and ethics

c. Professional standards and the threat of discipline

d. External review of a firm’s quality control system

e. Legislation establishing prohibitions and requirements for a firm or a firm’s professional employees

f. Competency and experience requirements for professional licensure

g. Professional resources, such as hotlines, for consultation on ethical issues

Examples of safeguards implemented by the client that would operate in combination with other safeguards are as follows:

a. The client has personnel with suitable skill, knowledge, or experience who make managerial decisions about the delivery of professional services and makes use of third-party resources for consultation as needed.

b. The tone at the top emphasizes the client's commitment to fair financial reporting and compliance with the applicable laws, rules, regulations, and corporate governance policies.

c. Policies and procedures are in place to achieve fair financial reporting and compliance with the applicable laws, rules, regulations, and corporate governance policies.

d. Policies and procedures are in place to address ethical conduct.

e. A governance structure, such as an active audit committee, is in place to ensure appropriate decision making, oversight, and communications regarding a firm’s services.

f. Policies are in place that bar the entity from hiring a firm to provide services that do not serve the public interest or that would cause the firm’s independence or objectivity to be considered impaired.

The following are examples of safeguards implemented by the firm:

a. Firm leadership that stresses the importance of complying with the rules and the expectation that engagement teams will act in the public interest.

b. Policies and procedures that are designed to implement and monitor engagement quality control.
c. Documented policies regarding the identification of threats to compliance with the rules, the evaluation of the significance of those threats, and the identification and application of safeguards that can eliminate identified threats or reduce them to an acceptable level.

d. Internal policies and procedures that are designed to monitor compliance with the firm’s policies and procedures.

e. Policies and procedures that are designed to identify interests or relationships between the firm or its partners and professional staff and the firm’s clients.

f. The use of different partners, partner equivalents, and engagement teams from different offices or that report to different supervisors.

g. Training on, and timely communication of, a firm’s policies and procedures and any changes to them for all partners and professional staff.

h. Policies and procedures that are designed to monitor the firm’s, partner’s, or partner equivalent’s reliance on revenue from a single client and that, if necessary, trigger action to address excessive reliance.

i. Designation of someone from senior management as the person responsible for overseeing the adequate functioning of the firm’s quality control system.

j. A means for informing partners and professional staff of attest clients and related entities from which they must be independent.

k. A disciplinary mechanism that is designed to promote compliance with policies and procedures.

l. Policies and procedures that are designed to empower staff to communicate to senior members of the firm any engagement issues that concern them without fear of retribution.

m. Policies and procedures relating to independence and ethics communications with audit committees or others charged with client governance.

n. Discussion of independence and ethics issues with the audit committee or others responsible for the client’s governance.

o. Disclosures to the audit committee or others responsible for the client’s governance regarding the nature of the services that are or will be provided and the extent of the fees charged or to be charged.

p. The involvement of another professional accountant who (a) reviews the work that is done for a client or (b) otherwise advises the engagement team. This individual could be someone from outside the firm or someone from within the firm who is not otherwise associated with the engagement.

q. Consultation on engagement issues with an interested third party, such as a committee of independent directors, a professional regulatory body, or another professional accountant.

r. Rotation of senior personnel who are part of the engagement team.

s. Policies and procedures that are designed to ensure that members of the engagement team do not make or assume responsibility for management decisions for the client.

t. The involvement of another firm to perform part of the engagement.

u. Having another firm to reperform a nonattest service to the extent necessary for it to take responsibility for that service.

v. The removal of an individual from an attest engagement team when that individual’s financial interests or relationships pose a threat to independence or objectivity.
w. A consultation function that is staffed with experts in accounting, auditing, independence, ethics, and reporting matters who can help engagement teams

i. assess issues when guidance is unclear or when the issues are highly technical or require a great deal of judgment; and

ii. resist undue pressure from a client when the engagement team disagrees with the client about such issues.

x. Client acceptance and continuation policies that are designed to prevent association with clients that pose a threat that is not at an acceptable level to the member's compliance with the rules.

y. Policies that preclude audit partners or partner equivalents from being directly compensated for selling nonattest services to the attest client.

z. Policies and procedures addressing ethical conduct and compliance with laws and regulations. [No prior reference: new content]

**Effective Date**

.24 Effective December 15, 2015. Early implementation is allowed provided the member has implemented the revised code.

[See Revision History Table.]

| A nonauthoritative Conceptual Framework Toolkit for Members in Public Practice is available at https://us.aicpa.org/content/dam/aicpa/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/downloadedocuments/toolkitsandaids/conceptualframeworktoolkitformembersinpublicpractice.docm. |

1.000.020 Ethical Conflicts

.01 An ethical conflict arises when a member encounters one or both of the following:

a. Obstacles to following an appropriate course of action due to internal or external pressures

b. Conflicts in applying relevant professional standards or legal standards

.02 Once an ethical conflict is encountered, a member may be required to take steps to best achieve compliance with the rules and law. In weighing alternative courses of action, the member should consider factors such as the following:

a. Relevant facts and circumstances, including applicable rules, laws, or regulations

b. Ethical issues involved

c. Established internal procedures

.03 The member should also be prepared to justify any departures that the member believes were appropriate in applying the relevant rules and law. If the member was unable to resolve the conflict in a way that permitted compliance with the applicable rules and law, the member may have to address the consequences of any violations.

.04 Before pursuing a course of action, the member should consider consulting with appropriate persons within the firm or the organization that employs the member.

.05 If a member decides not to consult with appropriate persons within the firm or the organization that employs the member and the conflict remains unresolved after pursuing the selected course of action,
the member should consider either consulting with other individuals for help in reaching a resolution or obtaining advice from an appropriate professional body or legal counsel. The member also should consider documenting the substance of the issue, the parties with whom the issue was discussed, details of any discussions held, and any decisions made concerning the issue.

.06 If the ethical conflict remains unresolved, the member will in all likelihood be in violation of one or more rules if he or she remains associated with the matter creating the conflict. Accordingly, the member should consider his or her continuing relationship with the engagement team, specific assignment, client, firm, or employer. [No prior reference: new content.]

.07 Refer to the “Responding to Noncompliance With Laws and Regulations” interpretation [1.180.010] of the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] for additional guidance.

Effective Date

.08 Effective December 15, 2014.

[See Revision History Table.]

1.100 Integrity and Objectivity

1.100.001 Integrity and Objectivity Rule

.01 In the performance of any professional service, a member shall maintain objectivity and integrity, shall be free of conflicts of interest, and shall not knowingly misrepresent facts or subordinate his or her judgment to others. [Prior reference: paragraph .01 of ET section 102]

Interpretations Under the Integrity and Objectivity Rule

1.100.005 Application of the Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice and Ethical Conflicts

.01 In the absence of an interpretation of the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] that addresses a particular relationship or circumstance, a member should apply the “Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice” [1.000.010].

.02 A member would be considered in violation of the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] if the member cannot demonstrate that safeguards were applied that eliminated or reduced significant threats to an acceptable level.

.03 A member should consider the guidance in “Ethical Conflicts” [1.000.020] when addressing ethical conflicts that may arise when the member encounters obstacles to following an appropriate course of action. Such obstacles may be due to internal or external pressures or to conflicts in applying relevant professional or legal standards, or both. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.04 Paragraphs .01 and .02 are effective December 15, 2015 and early implementation is allowed provided the member has implemented the revised code. Paragraph .03 is effective December 15, 2014.

1.110 Conflicts of Interest

1.110.010 Conflicts of Interest for Members in Public Practice

.01 A member or his or her firm may be faced with a conflict of interest when performing a professional service. In determining whether a professional service, relationship or matter would result in a conflict of interest,
a member should use professional judgment, taking into account whether a reasonable and informed third party who is aware of the relevant information would conclude that a conflict of interest exists.

.02 A conflict of interest creates adverse interest and self-interest threats to the member’s compliance with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001]. For example, threats may be created when

   a. the member or the member’s firm provides a professional service related to a particular matter involving two or more clients whose interests with respect to that matter are in conflict, or

   b. the interests of the member or the member’s firm with respect to a particular matter and the interests of the client for whom the member or the member’s firm provides a professional service related to that matter are in conflict.

.03 Certain professional engagements, such as audits, reviews and other attest services require independence. Independence impairments under the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001], its interpretations, and rulings cannot be eliminated by the safeguards provided in this interpretation or by disclosure and consent.

.04 The following are examples of situations in which conflicts of interest may arise:

   a. Providing corporate finance services to a client seeking to acquire an audit client of the firm, when the firm has obtained confidential information during the course of the audit that may be relevant to the transaction

   b. Advising two clients at the same time who are competing to acquire the same company when the advice might be relevant to the parties’ competitive positions

   c. Providing services to both a vendor and a purchaser who are clients of the firm in relation to the same transaction

   d. Preparing valuations of assets for two clients who are in an adversarial position with respect to the same assets

   e. Representing two clients at the same time regarding the same matter who are in a legal dispute with each other, such as during divorce proceedings or the dissolution of a partnership

   f. Providing a report for a licensor on royalties due under a license agreement while at the same time advising the licensee of the correctness of the amounts payable under the same license agreement

   g. Advising a client to invest in a business in which, for example, the immediate family member of the member has a financial interest in the business

   h. Providing strategic advice to a client on its competitive position while having a joint venture or similar interest with a competitor of the client

   i. Advising a client on the acquisition of a business which the firm is also interested in acquiring

   j. Advising a client on the purchase of a product or service while having a royalty or commission agreement with one of the potential vendors of that product or service

   k. Providing forensic investigation services to a client for the purpose of evaluating or supporting contemplated litigation against another client of the firm

   l. Providing tax or personal financial planning services for several members of a family whom the member knows to have opposing interests

   m. Referring a personal financial planning or tax client to an insurance broker or other service provider, which refers clients to the member under an exclusive arrangement
n. A client asks the member to provide tax or personal financial planning services to its executives, and the services could result in the member recommending to the executives actions that may be adverse to the company. [Prior reference: paragraphs .198–.199 of ET section 191]

o. A member serves as a director or an officer of a local United Way or similar organization that operates as a federated fund-raising organization from which local charities receive funds. Some of those charities are clients of the member’s firm. [Prior reference: paragraphs .186–.187 of ET section 191]

p. A member who is an officer, a director, or a shareholder of an entity has significant influence over the entity, and that entity has a loan to or from a client of the firm. [Prior reference: paragraphs .220–.221 of ET section 191]

Identification of a Conflict of Interest

.05 Before accepting a new client relationship, engagement, or business relationship, a member should take reasonable steps to identify circumstances that might create a conflict of interest including identification of

a. the nature of the relevant interests and relationships between the parties involved and

b. the nature of the service and its implication for relevant parties.

.06 The nature of the relevant interests and relationships and the services may change during the course of the engagement. This is particularly true when a member is asked to conduct an engagement for a client in a situation that may become adversarial with respect to another client or the member or member’s firm, even though the parties who engage the member may not initially be involved in a dispute. A member should remain alert to such changes for the purpose of identifying circumstances that might create a conflict of interest.

.07 For the purpose of identifying interests and relationships that might create a conflict of interest, having an effective conflict identification process assists a member in identifying actual or potential conflicts of interest that may create significant threats to compliance with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] prior to determining whether to accept an engagement and throughout an engagement. This includes matters identified by external parties, for example clients or potential clients. The earlier an actual or potential conflict of interest is identified, the greater the likelihood of a member being able to apply safeguards to eliminate or reduce significant threats to an acceptable level. The process to identify actual or potential conflicts of interest will depend on such factors as

a. the nature of the professional services provided,

b. the size of the firm,

c. the size and nature of the client base, and

d. the structure of the firm, for example the number and geographic location of offices.

.08 If the firm is a member of a network, the member is not required to take specific steps to identify conflicts of interest of other network firms; however, if the member knows or has reason to believe that such conflicts of interest may exist or might arise due to interests and relationships of a network firm, the member should evaluate the significance of the threat created by such conflicts of interest as described below.

Evaluation of a Conflict of Interest

.09 When an actual conflict of interest has been identified, the member should evaluate the significance of the threat created by the conflict of interest to determine if the threat is at an acceptable level. Members should consider both qualitative and quantitative factors when evaluating the significance of the threat, including the extent to which existing safeguards already reduce the threat to an acceptable level. In evaluating the significance of an identified threat, members should consider both of the following:
a. The significance of relevant interests or relationships.

b. The significance of the threats created by performing the professional service or services. In general, the more direct the connection between the professional service and the matter on which the parties’ interests are in conflict, the more significant the threat to compliance with the rule will be.

.10 If the member concludes that the threat is not at an acceptable level, the member should apply safeguards to eliminate the threat or reduce it to an acceptable level. Examples of safeguards include the following:

a. Implementing mechanisms to prevent unauthorized disclosure of confidential information when performing professional services related to a particular matter for two or more clients whose interests with respect to that matter are in conflict. This could include

i. using separate engagement teams who are provided with clear policies and procedures on maintaining confidentiality;

ii. creating separate areas of practice for specialty functions within the firm, which may act as a barrier to the passing of confidential client information from one practice area to another within a firm;

iii. establishing policies and procedures to limit access to client files, the use of confidentiality agreements signed by employees and partners of the firm and the physical and electronic separation of confidential information.

b. Regularly reviewing the application of safeguards by a senior individual not involved with the client engagement or engagements.

c. Having a member of the firm who is not involved in providing the service or otherwise affected by the conflict, review the work performed to assess whether the key judgments and conclusions are appropriate.

d. Consulting with third parties, such as a professional body, legal counsel, or another professional accountant.

.11 In cases where an identified threat may be so significant that no safeguards will eliminate the threat or reduce it to an acceptable level, or the member is unable to implement effective safeguards, the member should (a) decline to perform or discontinue the professional services that would result in the conflict of interest; or (b) terminate the relevant relationships or dispose of the relevant interests to eliminate the threat or reduce it to an acceptable level.

Disclosure of a Conflict of Interest and Consent

.12 When a conflict of interest exists, the member should disclose the nature of the conflict of interest to clients and other appropriate parties affected by the conflict and obtain their consent to perform the professional services. The member should disclose the conflict of interest and obtain consent even if the member concludes that threats are at an acceptable level.

.13 Disclosure and consent may take different forms. The following are examples:

a. General disclosure to clients of circumstances in which the member, in keeping with common commercial practice, does not provide services exclusively for any one client (for example, in a particular service in a particular market sector) in order for the client to provide general consent accordingly. Such disclosure might be made in a member’s standard terms and conditions for the engagement.

b. Specific disclosure to affected clients of the circumstances of the particular conflict including an explanation of the situation and any planned safeguards, sufficient to enable the client to make an informed decision with respect to the matter and to provide specific consent.
The member should determine whether the nature and significance of the conflict of interest is such that specific disclosure and specific consent are necessary, as opposed to general disclosure and general consent. For this purpose, the member should exercise professional judgment in evaluating the circumstances that create a conflict of interest, including the parties that might be affected, the nature of the issues that might arise and the potential for the particular matter to develop in an unexpected manner.

When a member has requested specific consent from a client and that consent has been refused by the client, the member should (a) decline to perform or discontinue professional services that would result in the conflict of interest; or (b) terminate the relevant relationships or dispose of the relevant interests to eliminate the threat or reduce it to an acceptable level, such that consent can be obtained, after applying any additional safeguards, if necessary.

The member is encouraged to document the nature of the circumstances giving rise to the conflict of interest, the safeguards applied to eliminate or reduce the threats to an acceptable level, and the consent obtained.

When addressing conflicts of interest, including making disclosures and seeking guidance of third parties, a member should remain alert to the requirements of the "Confidential Client Information Rule" [1.700.001] and the "Confidential Information Obtained From Employment or Volunteer Activities" interpretation [1.400.070] of the "Acts Discreditable Rule" [1.400.001]. In addition, federal, state, or local statutes, or regulations concerning confidentiality of client information may be more restrictive than the requirements contained in the Code of Professional Conduct.

When practicing before the IRS or other taxing authorities, members should ensure compliance with any requirements that are more restrictive. For example, Treasury Department Circular No. 230, Regulations Governing Practice before the Internal Revenue Service, provides more restrictive requirements concerning written consent by the client when a conflict of interest exists.

When a member serves as a director of an entity, such as a bank, the member's fiduciary responsibilities to the entity may create threats to the member's compliance with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] and the “Confidential Client Information Rule” [1.700.001]. For example, an adverse interest threat to the member's objectivity may exist if the member's clients are customers of the entity or likely to engage in significant transactions with the entity. A member's general knowledge and experience may be very helpful to an entity in formulating policies and making business decisions. Nevertheless, if the member's clients are likely to engage in significant transactions with the entity, it would be more appropriate for the member to serve as a consultant to the board. Under such an arrangement, the member could limit activities to those that do not threaten the member's compliance with these rules. If, however, the member serves as a board member, the member should evaluate the significance of any threats and apply safeguards, when necessary, to eliminate or reduce the threats to an acceptable level.


This revised interpretation is effective December 15, 2014.
1.120 Gifts and Entertainment

1.120.010 Offering or Accepting Gifts or Entertainment

.01 For purposes of this interpretation, a client includes the client, an individual in a key position with the client, or an individual with a beneficial ownership interest (known through reasonable inquiry) that gives the individual significant influence over the client.

.02 When a member offers to a client or accepts gifts or entertainment from a client, self-interest, familiarity, or undue influence threats to the member’s compliance with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] may exist.

.03 Threats to compliance with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards and the member would be presumed to lack integrity in violation of the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” in the following circumstances:

a. The member offers to a client or accepts gifts or entertainment from a client that violate the member’s or client’s policies or applicable laws, rules, and regulations; and

b. The member knows of the violation or demonstrates recklessness in not knowing.

.04 A member should evaluate the significance of any threats to determine if they are at an acceptable level. Threats are at an acceptable level when gifts or entertainment are reasonable in the circumstances. The member should exercise judgment in determining whether gifts or entertainment would be considered reasonable in the circumstances. The following are examples of relevant facts and circumstances:

a. The nature of the gift or entertainment

b. The occasion giving rise to the gift or entertainment

c. The cost or value of the gift or entertainment

d. The nature, frequency, and value of other gifts and entertainment offered or accepted

e. Whether the entertainment was associated with the active conduct of business directly before, during, or after the entertainment

f. Whether other clients also participated in the entertainment

g. The individuals from the client and member’s firm who participated in the entertainment

.05 Threats to compliance with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level through the application of safeguards if a member offers to a client or accepts gifts or entertainment from a client that is not reasonable in the circumstances. The member would be presumed to lack objectivity in violation of the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” under these circumstances.


[See Revision History Table.]

A nonauthoritative basis-for-conclusions document summarizing considerations that were deemed significant in the development of this interpretation is available at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadeddocuments/gifts_basis_document.pdf.
A nonauthoritative question and answer regarding campaign contributions is available at the following address. The subject is member contributions made to the campaign of an individual who holds a key position with or has a financial interest in an attest client. https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadeddocuments/ethics-general-faqs.pdf.

1.130 Preparing and Reporting Information

1.130.010 Knowing Misrepresentations in the Preparation of Financial Statements or Records

.01 Threats to compliance with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards and the member would be considered to have knowingly misrepresented facts in violation of the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule,” if the member

a. makes, or permits or directs another to make, materially false and misleading entries in an entity’s financial statements or records;

b. fails to correct an entity’s financial statements or records that are materially false and misleading when the member has the authority to record the entries; or

c. signs, or permits or directs another to sign, a document containing materially false and misleading information. [Prior reference: paragraph .02 of ET section 102]

1.130.020 Subordination of Judgment

.01 The “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] prohibits a member from knowingly misrepresenting facts or subordinating his or her judgment when performing professional services for a client, for an employer, or on a volunteer basis. This interpretation addresses differences of opinion between a member and his or her supervisor or any other person within the member’s organization.

.02 Self-interest, familiarity, and undue influence threats to the member’s compliance with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] may exist when a member and his or her supervisor or any other person within the member’s organization have a difference of opinion relating to the application of accounting principles; auditing standards; or other relevant professional standards, including standards applicable to tax and consulting services or applicable laws or regulations.

.03 A member should evaluate the significance of any threats to determine if they are at an acceptable level. Threats are at an acceptable level if the member concludes that the position taken does not result in a material misrepresentation of fact or a violation of applicable laws or regulations. If threats are not at an acceptable level, the member should apply the safeguards in paragraphs .06-.08 to eliminate or reduce the threat(s) to an acceptable level so that the member does not subordinate his or her judgment.

.04 In evaluating the significance of any identified threats, the member should determine, after appropriate research or consultation, whether the result of the position taken by the supervisor or other person

a. fails to comply with professional standards, when applicable;

b. creates a material misrepresentation of fact; or

c. may violate applicable laws or regulations.

.05 If the member concludes that threats are at an acceptable level the member should discuss his or her conclusions with the person taking the position. No further action would be needed under this interpretation.

.06 If the member concludes that the position results in a material misrepresentation of fact or a violation of applicable laws or regulations, then threats would not be at an acceptable level. In such circumstances, the member should discuss his or her concerns with the supervisor.
.07 If the difference of opinion is not resolved after discussing the concerns with the supervisor, the member should discuss his or her concerns with the appropriate higher level(s) of management within the member’s organization (for example, the supervisor’s immediate superior, senior management, and those charged with governance).

.08 If after discussing the concerns with the supervisor and appropriate higher level(s) of management within the member’s organization, the member concludes that appropriate action was not taken, then the member should consider, in no specific order, the following safeguards to ensure that threats to the member’s compliance with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] are eliminated or reduced to an acceptable level:

a. Determine whether the organization’s internal policies and procedures have any additional requirements for reporting differences of opinion.

b. Determine whether he or she is responsible for communicating to third parties, such as regulatory authorities or the organization’s (former organization’s) external accountant. In considering such communications, the member should be cognizant of his or her obligations under the “Confidential Information Obtained From Employment or Volunteer Activities” interpretation [1.400.070] of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [1.400.001].

c. Consult with his or her legal counsel regarding his or her responsibilities.

d. Document his or her understanding of the facts, the accounting principles, auditing standards, or other relevant professional standards involved or applicable laws or regulations and the conversations and parties with whom these matters were discussed.

.09 If the member concludes that no safeguards can eliminate or reduce the threats to an acceptable level or if the member concludes that appropriate action was not taken, then he or she should consider the continuing relationship with the member’s organization and take appropriate steps to eliminate his or her exposure to subordination of judgment.

.10 Nothing in this interpretation precludes a member from resigning from the organization at any time. However, resignation may not relieve the member of responsibilities in the situation, including any responsibility to disclose concerns to third parties, such as regulatory authorities or the employer’s (former employer’s) external accountant.

.11 A member should use professional judgment and apply similar safeguards, as appropriate, to other situations involving a difference of opinion as described in this interpretation so that the member does not subordinate his or her judgment. [Prior reference: paragraph .05 of ET section 102]

1.140 Client Advocacy

1.140.010 Client Advocacy

.01 An advocacy threat to compliance with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] may exist when a member or the member’s firm is engaged to perform nonattest services, such as tax and consulting services, that involve acting as an advocate for the client or to support a client’s position on accounting or financial reporting issues either within the firm or outside the firm with standard setters, regulators, or others.

.02 The code governs these types of professional services, and the member shall perform such services in compliance with the “General Standards Rule” [1.300.001], the “Compliance With Standards Rule” [1.310.001], the “Accounting Principles Rule” [1.320.001], and any interpretations thereof. The member shall also comply with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] that requires maintaining objectivity and integrity and prohibits subordinating one’s judgment to others.

.03 Some professional services involving client advocacy may stretch the bounds of performance standards, go beyond sound and reasonable professional practice, or compromise credibility, thereby creating threats
to the member’s compliance with the rules and damaging the reputation of the member and the member’s firm. If such circumstances exist, the member and member’s firm should determine whether it is appropriate to perform the professional services.

04 When performing professional services requiring independence, a member shall also comply with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001]. [Prior reference: paragraph .07 of ET section 102]

1.150 Use of a Third-Party Service Provider

1.150.040 Use of a Third-Party Service Provider

01 When a member uses a third-party service provider to assist the member in providing professional services, threats to compliance with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] may exist.

02 Clients might not have an expectation that a member would use a third-party service provider to assist the member in providing the professional services. Therefore, before disclosing confidential client information to a third-party service provider, the member should inform the client, preferably in writing, that the member may use a third-party service provider. If the client objects to the member’s use of a third-party service provider, the member either should not use the third-party service provider to perform the professional services or should decline to perform the engagement.

03 A member is not required to inform the client when he or she uses a third-party service provider to provide administrative support services to the member (for example, record storage, software application hosting, or authorized e-file tax transmittal services).


A nonauthoritative basis for conclusions document that summarizes considerations that were deemed significant in the development of this interpretation is available at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadabledocuments/basisforconclusionsoutsourcing.pdf.

In addition, nonauthoritative sample client disclosure language a member could use to fulfill the requirement discussed in this interpretation is also available at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadabledocuments/sample_disclosure_notification.pdf.

1.180 Responding to Noncompliance With Laws and Regulations

1.180.010 Responding to Noncompliance With Laws and Regulations

Introduction

01 When a member encounters or is made aware of noncompliance or suspected noncompliance with laws and regulations in the course of providing a professional service to a client, threats to compliance with the "Integrity and Objectivity Rule" [1.100.001] may exist. The purpose of this interpretation is to set out the member’s responsibilities when encountering such noncompliance or suspected noncompliance and guide the member in evaluating the implications of the matter and the possible courses of action when responding to it. The member’s responsibilities in this interpretation are owed to a person or entity that engages the member or member’s firm to perform professional services (engaging entity). Therefore, when the engaging entity and subject entity are different, the term client refers to the engaging entity.

02 Noncompliance with laws and regulations (noncompliance) comprises acts of omission or commission, intentional or unintentional, that are contrary to the prevailing laws or regulations and are committed by a
client or by *those charged with governance*, by management, or by other individuals working for or under the direction of a client.

.03 When responding to noncompliance or suspected noncompliance in the course of providing a *professional service* to a client, the *member* should consider the *member’s obligations* under the "*Confidential Client Information Rule*" [1.700.001]. For example, a *member* should not disclose the noncompliance or suspected noncompliance to a third party without the client’s consent unless expressly permitted under the "*Confidential Client Information Rule*," such as when reporting the noncompliance or suspected noncompliance to a regulatory authority in order to comply with applicable laws and regulations or the "*Compliance With Standards Rule*" [1.310.001], as discussed in paragraphs .04 and .05d, respectively.

.04 Some regulators, such as the SEC or state boards of accountancy, may have regulatory provisions governing how a *member* should address noncompliance or suspected noncompliance which may differ from or go beyond this interpretation. In some circumstances, state and federal civil and criminal laws may also impose additional requirements. When encountering noncompliance or suspected noncompliance, a *member* has a responsibility to obtain an understanding of those legal or regulatory provisions and comply with them, including any requirement to report the matter to an appropriate authority and any prohibition on alerting the client prior to making any disclosure.

.05 A distinguishing mark of the accounting profession is its acceptance of the responsibility to act in the public interest. When responding to noncompliance or suspected noncompliance, the objectives of a *member* are as follows:

- *a.* To comply with the "*Integrity and Objectivity Rule*" [1.100.001]
- *b.* To alert management or, when appropriate, *those charged with governance* of the client, to enable them to
  - i. rectify, remediate, or mitigate the consequences of the identified or suspected noncompliance or
  - ii. deter the commission of the noncompliance when it has not yet occurred
- *c.* To determine whether withdrawal from the engagement and the professional relationship is necessary, when permitted by law and regulation
- *d.* To take such further action as appropriate in the public interest
- *e.* To comply with applicable laws, regulations, and the "*Compliance With Standards Rule*" [1.310.001]

*Applicability*

.06 This interpretation does not apply to the following:

- *a.* Personal misconduct unrelated to the business activities of the client
- *b.* Noncompliance by parties other than
  - i. the client,
  - ii. *those charged with governance*,
  - iii. management, or
  - iv. other individuals working for or under the direction of the client.

This includes, for example, circumstances in which a *member* has been engaged by a client to perform a due diligence assignment on a third-party entity (that is, subject entity) and the identified or suspected noncompliance has been committed by that third party.
c. A litigation or investigation engagement as defined in AICPA Statement on Standards for Forensic Services No. 1

d. An engagement where the primary purpose is to identify, reach a conclusion regarding, or otherwise respond to a known or potential noncompliance with laws and regulations (NOCLAR)

e. An engagement pursuant to which the protections set forth in IRC Section 7525 or any comparable state or local statutes apply

f. An engagement where compliance with this interpretation would cause a violation of law or regulation

A member may nevertheless find the guidance in this interpretation helpful in considering how to respond in these situations.

Scope

.07 This interpretation sets out the approach to be taken by a member who encounters or is made aware of noncompliance or suspected noncompliance with the following:

a. Laws and regulations generally recognized to have a direct effect on the determination of material amounts and disclosures in the client’s financial statements

b. Other laws and regulations that do not have a direct effect on the determination of the amounts and disclosures in the client’s financial statements, but compliance with which may be fundamental to the operating aspects of the client’s business, to its ability to continue its business, or to avoid material penalties

.08 Examples of laws and regulations which this interpretation addresses may include those that deal with the following:

a. Fraud, corruption, and bribery

b. Money laundering

c. Securities markets and trading

d. Banking and other financial products and services

e. Data protection

f. Tax and pension liabilities and payments

g. Environmental protection

h. Public health and safety

.09 Noncompliance may result in fines, litigation, or other consequences for the client that may have a material effect on its financial statements. Importantly, such noncompliance may have wider public interest implications in terms of potentially substantial harm to investors, creditors, employees, or the general public. For the purposes of this interpretation, an act that causes substantial harm is one that results in serious adverse consequences to any of these parties in financial or nonfinancial terms.

.10 A member who encounters or is made aware of matters that are clearly inconsequential is not required to comply with this interpretation with respect to such matters.

Responsibilities of the Client’s Management and Those Charged With Governance

.11 The client’s management is responsible, with the oversight of those charged with governance, to ensure that the client’s business activities are conducted in accordance with laws and regulations. It is also
the responsibility of management and those charged with governance to identify and address any noncompliance by the client, by an individual charged with governance of the entity, by a member of management, or by other individuals working for or under the direction of the client.

Responsibilities of Members in Public Practice

.12 When a member becomes aware of a matter to which this interpretation applies, the member should take timely steps to comply with this interpretation, taking into account the member’s understanding of the nature of the matter and the potential harm to the interests of the entity, investors, creditors, employees, or the general public.

Members Providing Financial Statement Audit or Review Services

Obtaining an Understanding of the Matter

.13 If a member engaged to perform financial statement audit or review services becomes aware of credible information concerning an instance of noncompliance or suspected noncompliance, whether in the course of performing the engagement or through information provided by other parties, the member should obtain an understanding of the matter, including the nature of the act and the circumstances in which it has occurred or is likely to occur.

.14 A member is expected to apply knowledge, professional judgment, and expertise but is not expected to have a level of knowledge of laws and regulations greater than that required to undertake the engagement. Whether an act constitutes noncompliance is ultimately a matter to be determined by a court or other appropriate adjudicative body.

.15 If the member identifies or suspects that noncompliance has occurred or is likely to occur, the member should discuss the matter with the appropriate level of management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance.

.16 Such discussion may serve to clarify the member’s understanding of the facts and circumstances relevant to the matter and its potential consequences.

.17 The appropriate level of management with whom to discuss the matter is a question of professional judgment. Relevant factors to consider may include these:

a. The nature and circumstances of the matter
b. The individuals actually or potentially involved
c. The likelihood of collusion
d. The potential consequences of the matter
e. Whether that level of management is able to investigate the matter and take appropriate action

.18 The appropriate level of management is generally at least one level above the person or persons involved or potentially involved in the matter. If a member believes that management is involved in the noncompliance or suspected noncompliance, the member should discuss the matter with those charged with governance. The member may also consider discussing the matter with internal auditors, when applicable. In the context of a group audit engagement, the appropriate level may be management at an entity that controls the client.

Addressing the Matter

.19 In discussing the noncompliance or suspected noncompliance with management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance, the member should advise them to take appropriate and timely actions, if they have not already done so, which may include the following:
Part 1 — Members in Public Practice

a. Rectifying, remediating, or mitigating the consequences of the noncompliance

b. Deterring the commission of the noncompliance if it has not yet occurred

c. Disclosing the matter to an appropriate authority where required by law or regulation or when otherwise considered necessary

.20 The member should consider whether the client’s management and, if applicable, those charged with governance understand their legal or regulatory responsibilities with respect to the noncompliance or suspected noncompliance. If not, the member may want to suggest appropriate sources of information or recommend that they obtain legal advice.

.21 The member should comply with the following:

a. Applicable laws and regulations, including legal or regulatory provisions governing the reporting of noncompliance or suspected noncompliance to an appropriate authority. In this regard, some laws and regulations may stipulate a period within which reports are to be made.

b. Applicable requirements under professional standards, including those relating to
   i. identifying and responding to noncompliance, including fraud;
   ii. communicating with those charged with governance;
   iii. considering the implications of the noncompliance or suspected noncompliance on the audit, review, or compilation report for the current or prior engagements; and
   iv. communicating a former client’s noncompliance to the successor auditor to the extent required under professional standards.

Communication With Respect to Group Audit Engagements

.22 A member may, for purposes of a group audit engagement, be requested by the group engagement team to perform work on financial or other information related to a component of the group.

If the member becomes aware of noncompliance or suspected noncompliance, the member should, in addition to responding to the matter in accordance with the provisions of this section, communicate the noncompliance or suspected noncompliance to the group audit engagement partner in accordance with AU-C section 600, Special Considerations — Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors), unless prohibited from doing so by law or regulation.

.23 If the group audit engagement partner becomes aware of noncompliance or suspected noncompliance in the course of a group audit engagement, including as a result of being informed of such a matter in accordance with paragraph .22, the group audit engagement partner should, in addition to responding to the matter in the context of the group audit engagement in accordance with the provisions of this section, consider whether the matter may be relevant to one or more components whose financial or other information is subject to procedures performed for purposes of the group audit engagement.

In these circumstances, the group audit engagement partner should take steps to have the noncompliance or suspected noncompliance communicated to those performing work at components where the matter may be relevant, unless prohibited from doing so by law or regulation.

Determining Whether Withdrawal From the Engagement Is Necessary

.24 The member should evaluate the appropriateness of the response of management and, if applicable, those charged with governance.

.25 Relevant factors to consider when evaluating the appropriateness of the response of management and, where applicable, those charged with governance may include whether
a. the response is timely.

b. the noncompliance or suspected noncompliance has been adequately investigated.

c. action has been, or is being, taken to rectify, remediate, or mitigate the consequences of any noncompliance.

d. action has been or is being taken to deter the commission of any noncompliance if it has not yet occurred.

e. appropriate steps have been, or are being, taken to reduce the risk of recurrence; for example, additional controls or training.

f. the noncompliance or suspected noncompliance has been disclosed to an appropriate authority when appropriate and, if so, whether the disclosure appears adequate.

.26 In light of the response of management and, if applicable, those charged with governance, the member should determine whether withdrawing from the engagement and the professional relationship is necessary, where permitted by law and regulation.

.27 The determination of whether withdrawing from the engagement and the professional relationship is necessary may depend on various factors, including these:

   a. The legal and regulatory framework  
   b. The urgency of the matter  
   c. The pervasiveness of the matter throughout the client  
   d. Whether the member continues to have confidence in the integrity of management and, if applicable, those charged with governance  
   e. Whether the noncompliance or suspected noncompliance is likely to reoccur  
   f. Whether there is credible evidence of actual or potential substantial harm to the interests of the entity, investors, creditors, employees, or the general public

.28 Examples of circumstances that may cause a member no longer to have confidence in the integrity of management and, where applicable, those charged with governance include situations such as the following:

   a. The member suspects or has evidence of management’s involvement or intended involvement in any noncompliance.

   b. The member is aware that management has knowledge of such noncompliance and, contrary to legal or regulatory requirements, has not reported, or authorized the reporting of, the matter to an appropriate authority within a reasonable period.

.29 As consideration of the matter may involve complex analysis and judgments, a member may want to consider consulting internally or externally, including obtaining legal or other advice to understand the member’s options and the implications of taking any particular course of action.

Documentation

.30 In relation to an identified or suspected act of noncompliance that falls within the scope of this section, the member should, in addition to complying with the documentation requirements under applicable professional standards, document the following:

   a. The matter
Part 1 — Members in Public Practice

b. The results of discussion with management and, where applicable, those charged with governance and other parties

c. How management and, where applicable, those charged with governance, have responded to the matter

d. The judgments made and the courses of action the member took

Members Providing Services Other Than a Financial Statement Audit or Review Service

Obtaining an Understanding of the Matter and Addressing the Matter

.31 If a member engaged to perform professional services other than a financial statement audit or review service becomes aware of credible information concerning an instance of noncompliance or suspected noncompliance, whether in the course of performing the engagement or through information provided by other parties, the member should seek to obtain an understanding of the matter, including the nature of the act and the circumstances in which it has occurred or is likely to occur.

.32 A member is expected to apply knowledge, professional judgment, and expertise but is not expected to have a level of knowledge of laws and regulations greater than that required to undertake the engagement. Whether an act constitutes noncompliance is ultimately a matter to be determined by a court or other appropriate adjudicative body.

.33 If the member identifies or suspects that noncompliance has occurred or is likely to occur the member should discuss the matter with the appropriate level of management and, if the member has access to them and when appropriate, those charged with governance.

.34 Such discussion may serve to clarify the member’s understanding of the facts and circumstances relevant to the matter and its potential consequences.

.35 The appropriate level of management with whom to discuss the matter is a question of professional judgment. Relevant factors to consider may include the following:

   a. The nature and circumstances of the matter

   b. The individuals actually or potentially involved

   c. The likelihood of collusion

   d. The potential consequences of the matter

   e. Whether that level of management is able to investigate the matter and take appropriate action

Communicating the Matter to the Client’s Financial Statement Audit or Review Services Provider

.36 Members performing a service, other than a financial statement audit or review service, for a financial statement audit or review client. If the member is performing a service other than a financial statement audit or review service for a financial statement audit or review client of the firm or a component of a financial statement audit or review client of the firm, the member should communicate the noncompliance or suspected noncompliance within the firm. The communication should be made in accordance with the firm’s protocols or procedures or, in the absence of such protocols and procedures, directly to the financial statement audit or review engagement partner.

.37 If the member is performing a service for a financial statement audit or review client of a network firm or a component of a financial statement audit or review client of a network firm, the member should consider whether to communicate the noncompliance or suspected noncompliance to the network firm. If the communication is made, it should be made in accordance with the network’s protocols or procedures.
or, in the absence of such protocols and procedures, directly to the financial statement audit or review engagement partner.

.38 In all cases, the communication is to enable the financial statement audit or review engagement partner to be informed about the noncompliance or suspected noncompliance and to determine whether it should be addressed in accordance with the provisions of this interpretation and, if so, how.

.39 Members providing services to a client that is not a financial statement audit or review client. If the member is performing services for a client that is not a financial statement audit or review client of the firm, except as required by law or regulation, the member is not permitted to communicate the noncompliance or suspected noncompliance to the firm that is the client’s external auditor, if one exists. See the "Confidential Client Information Rule" [1.700.001].

Determining Whether Withdrawal From the Engagement Is Necessary

.40 The member should determine whether withdrawal from the engagement and the professional relationship is necessary, where permitted by law and regulation.

.41 Whether withdrawal from the engagement is necessary may depend on various factors, including the member’s understanding of the following:

a. The legal and regulatory framework

b. The appropriateness and timeliness of the response of management and, where applicable, those charged with governance

c. The urgency of the matter

d. Whether the member continues to have confidence in the integrity of management and, if applicable, those charged with governance

e. The likelihood of actual or potential substantial harm to the interests of the entity, investors, creditors, employees, or the general public

f. The pervasiveness of the matter throughout the client

g. Whether the noncompliance or suspected noncompliance is likely to reoccur

.42 Examples of circumstances that may cause the member no longer to have confidence in the integrity of management and, where applicable, those charged with governance include such situations as the following:

a. The member suspects or has evidence of management’s involvement or intended involvement in any noncompliance.

b. The member is aware that management has knowledge of such noncompliance and, contrary to legal or regulatory requirements, has not reported, or authorized the reporting of, the matter to an appropriate authority within a reasonable period.

.43 As consideration of the matter may involve complex analysis and judgments, a member may want to consider consulting internally or externally, including obtaining legal or other advice to understand the member’s options and the implications of taking any particular course of action.

Documentation

.44 In relation to an identified or suspected act of noncompliance that falls within the scope of this section, the member is encouraged to document the following, in addition to complying with the documentation requirements under applicable professional standards:
a. The matter

b. The results of discussion with management and, where applicable, those charged with governance and other parties

c. How management and, where applicable, those charged with governance have responded to the matter

d. The judgments made and the courses of action the member took

Effective Date

.45 This interpretation is effective June 30, 2023. Early implementation is allowed.

[See Revision History Table.]
outlined in this interpretation to analyze independence matters. A member may also wish to consider the conceptual framework approach described in this interpretation to gain a better understanding of the conclusions reached in other interpretations in ET section 1.200, “Independence.” [Prior reference: “Other Considerations” section of paragraph .02 of ET section 101]

.02 The code specifies that in some circumstances no safeguards can reduce an independence threat to an acceptable level. For example, the code specifies that a covered member may not own even an immaterial direct financial interest in an attest client because there is no safeguard to reduce the self-interest threat to an acceptable level. A member may not use the conceptual framework to overcome this prohibition or any other prohibition or requirement in an independence interpretation.

Definitions Used in Applying the Conceptual Framework for Independence

.03 Acceptable level. A level at which a reasonable and informed third party who is aware of the relevant information would be expected to conclude that a member’s independence is not impaired.

.04 Impair(ed). In connection with independence, to effectively extinguish independence. When a member’s independence is impaired, the member is not independent.

.05 Safeguards. Actions or other measures that may eliminate a threat or reduce a threat to an acceptable level.

.06 Threats. Relationships or circumstances that could impair independence.

Conceptual Framework Approach

.07 The conceptual framework approach entails identifying threats and evaluating the threat that the member would not be independent or would be perceived by a reasonable and informed third party who is aware of the relevant information as not being independent. The member must eliminate or reduce that threat to an acceptable level to conclude that the member is independent. Threats are at an acceptable level either because of the types of threats and their potential effect or because safeguards have eliminated or reduced the threat, so that a reasonable and informed third party who is aware of the relevant information would perceive that the member’s professional judgment is not compromised.

.08 Refer to paragraph .07 of the “Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice” [1.000.010.07] for a detailed description of the conceptual framework approach. [Prior reference: ET section 100-1]

Documentation

.09 When the member applies safeguards to eliminate or reduce significant threats to an acceptable level, as described in paragraph .07c of the “Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice” [1.000.010.07], the member should document the identified threats and safeguards applied. Failure to prepare the required documentation would be considered a violation of the “Compliance With Standards Rule” [1.310.001] rather than the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] if the member can demonstrate that safeguards were applied that eliminated or reduced significant threats to an acceptable level. [Prior reference: “Other Considerations” section of paragraph .02 of ET section 101]

Threats

.10 Many different relationships or circumstances (or combinations of relationships or circumstances) can create threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001]. It is impossible to identify every relationship or circumstance that creates a threat. Many threats fall into one or more of the following seven broad categories: adverse interest, advocacy, familiarity, management participation, self-interest, self-review, and undue influence.

.11 Examples of threats associated with a specific relationship or circumstance are identified in the interpretations of the code. Paragraphs .12–.18 in this section define and provide examples, which are not all inclusive, of each of these threat categories. In certain circumstances, the code specifies that because
of the type of threat and its potential effect, either no safeguards can eliminate or reduce the threat to an acceptable level, or a member would need to apply specific safeguards to eliminate or reduce an independence threat to an acceptable level. When independence interpretations in the code address one of these examples, a specific reference to the independence interpretation is provided in brackets after that example. If an example does not contain a specific reference to an independence interpretation, a member should use this “Conceptual Framework for Independence” interpretation to evaluate whether a threat is significant.

.12 Adverse interest threat. The threat that a member will not act with objectivity because the member’s interests are in opposition to the interests of an attest client. An example is either the attest client or the member commencing litigation against the other or expressing the intent to commence litigation. [1.290.010]

.13 Advocacy threat. The threat that a member will promote an attest client’s interests or position to the point that his or her independence is compromised. Examples of advocacy threats include the following:

a. A member promotes the attest client’s securities as part of an initial public offering. [1.295.130]

b. A member provides expert witness services to an attest client. [1.295.140]

c. A member represents an attest client in U.S. tax court or other public forum. [1.295.160]

.14 Familiarity threat. The threat that, because of a long or close relationship with an attest client, a member will become too sympathetic to the attest client’s interests or too accepting of the attest client’s work or product. Examples of familiarity threats include the following:

a. A member of the attest engagement team has an immediate family member or close relative in a key position at the attest client, such as the attest client’s CEO. [1.270.020 and 1.270.100]

b. A partner or partner equivalent of the firm has been a member of the attest engagement team for a prolonged period.

c. A member of the firm has recently been a director or an officer of the attest client. [1.277.010]

d. A member of the attest engagement team has a close friend who is in a key position at the attest client.

.15 Management participation threat. The threat that a member will take on the role of attest client management or otherwise assume management responsibilities for an attest client. Examples of management participation threats include the following:

a. A member serves as an officer or a director of the attest client. [1.275.005]

b. A member accepts responsibility for designing, implementing, or maintaining internal controls for the attest client. [1.295.030]

c. A member hires, supervises, or terminates the attest client’s employees. [1.295.135]

.16 Self-interest threat. The threat that a member could benefit, financially or otherwise, from an interest in, or relationship with, an attest client or persons associated with the attest client. Examples of self-interest threats include the following:

a. A member has a direct financial interest or material indirect financial interest in the attest client. [1.240.010]

b. A member has a loan from the attest client, an officer or a director of the attest client with the ability to affect decision-making, or any individual with a beneficial ownership interest (known through reasonable inquiry) that gives the individual significant influence over the attest client. [1.260.010]
c. A member or his or her firm relies excessively on revenue from a single attest client.

d. A member or member’s firm has a material joint venture or other material joint business arrangement with the attest client. \[1.265\]

[See Revision History Table.]

.17 Self-review threat. The threat that a member will not appropriately evaluate the results of a previous judgment made, or service performed or supervised by the member or an individual in the member’s firm and that the member will rely on that service in forming a judgment as part of an attest engagement. Certain self-review threats, such as preparing source documents used to generate the attest client’s financial statements \[1.295.120\], pose such a significant self-review threat that no safeguards can eliminate or reduce the threats to an acceptable level.

.18 Undue influence threat. The threat that a member will subordinate his or her judgment to that of an individual associated with an attest client or any relevant third party due to that individual’s reputation or expertise, aggressive or dominant personality, or attempts to coerce or exercise excessive influence over the member. Examples of undue influence threats include the following:

a. Management threatens to replace the member or member’s firm over a disagreement on the application of an accounting principle.

b. Management pressures the member to reduce necessary audit procedures in order to reduce audit fees.

c. The member receives a gift from the attest client, its management, or its significant shareholders. \[1.285.010\]

Safeguards

.19 Safeguards may partially or completely eliminate a threat or diminish the potential influence of a threat. The nature and extent of the safeguards applied will depend on many factors, including the size of the firm and whether the attest client is a public interest entity. To be effective, safeguards should eliminate the threat or reduce it to an acceptable level.

.20 The following are three broad categories of safeguards:

a. Safeguards created by the profession, legislation, or regulation.

b. Safeguards implemented by the attest client. It is not possible to rely solely on safeguards implemented by the attest client to eliminate or reduce significant threats to an acceptable level.

c. Safeguards implemented by the firm, including policies and procedures to implement professional and regulatory requirements.

.21 The effectiveness of a safeguard depends on many factors, including those listed here:

a. The facts and circumstances specific to a particular situation

b. The proper identification of threats

c. Whether the safeguard is suitably designed to meet its objectives

d. The party(ies) that will be subject to the safeguard

e. How the safeguard is applied

f. The consistency with which the safeguard is applied
Part 1 — Members in Public Practice

g. Who applies the safeguard

h. How the safeguard interacts with a safeguard from another category

i. Whether the attest client is a public interest entity

.22 Examples of various safeguards within each category are presented in paragraphs .21–.23 of the “Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice” [1.000.010]. The examples presented in these paragraphs are not intended to be all inclusive. In addition, threats may be sufficiently mitigated through the application of other safeguards not specifically identified in these paragraphs. [Prior reference: ET section 100-1]

Effective Date

.23 The addition of partner equivalents to paragraph .14b is effective for engagements covering periods beginning on or after December 15, 2014.


Nonauthoritative questions and answers regarding senior personnel’s long association on an attest engagement are available in the ethics FAQ at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadeddocuments/ethics-general-faqs.pdf.

1.220 Accounting Firms


1.220.010 Network and Network Firms

General

.01 To enhance their capabilities to provide professional services, firms frequently join larger groups, which typically are membership associations that are separate legal entities and otherwise unrelated to their members. The associations facilitate their members’ use of association services and resources. They do not themselves typically engage in public practice or provide professional services to their members’ clients or other third parties.

.02 Firms and other entities in the association cooperate with the firms and other entities that are members of the association to enhance their capabilities to provide professional services. For example, a firm may become a member of an association in order to refer work to, or receive referrals from, other association members. That characteristic alone would not be sufficient for the association to constitute a network or for the firm to be considered a network firm.

.03 However, an association would be considered a network if, in addition to cooperation among member firms and other entities to enhance their capabilities to provide professional services, member firms and other entities share one or more additional characteristics described in paragraphs .07–.18 of this section. If an association is considered a network and an entity is considered a network firm the classification should be applied consistently by all members of the association. When determining if one or more additional characteristics exist, members should give due consideration to what a reasonable and informed third party who is aware of the relevant information would be expected to conclude.
Part 1 — Members in Public Practice

.04  A network firm is required to comply with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] with respect to the financial statement audit and review clients of the other network firms if the use of the audit or review report for the client is not restricted, as defined by professional standards. For all other attest clients, the covered member should consider any threats that the covered member knows or has reason to believe may be created by another network firm’s interests and relationships. If those threats are not at an acceptable level, the covered member should apply safeguards to eliminate the threats or reduce them to an acceptable level. If safeguards cannot be applied to eliminate or reduce the threats to an acceptable level, independence will be impaired. Entities within the network that meet the definition of a network firm are subject to the “Independence Rule.”

.05  The determination that a firm or other entity or an association of firms or other entities meets the definition of a network firm and network is solely for purposes of this interpretation and may not be used or relied upon in any other context. In particular, determining whether a firm or other entity is a network firm or whether an association of firms or other entities is a network for purposes of defining legal responsibilities from one firm to the other or to third parties is beyond the scope of this interpretation.

Characteristics of a Network

.06  When an association is formed for the purpose of cooperating to enhance the firms’ capabilities to provide professional services, and one of the characteristics described in paragraphs .07–.18 of this section also applies, the association is considered to be a network.

.07  Sharing a common brand name. This characteristic exists when the association’s members or entities controlled by the association’s members share the use of a common brand name or share common initials as part of the firm name.

.08  A firm that does not use a common brand name as part of its firm name but makes reference in its stationery or promotional materials to being a member of an association of firms should carefully consider how it describes that membership and take steps to avoid the perception that it belongs to a network. The firm may wish to avoid such perception by clearly describing the nature of its membership in the association (for example, by stating on its stationery or promotional material that it is “an independently owned and operated member firm of XYZ Association”).

.09  Sharing common control. This characteristic exists when entities within the association are under common control with other firms in the association through ownership, management, or other means (for example, by contract). However, compliance with association requirements as a condition of membership does not indicate that members are under common control; rather, it reflects the type of cooperation that is expected when an entity joins the association.

.10  Sharing profits or costs. This characteristic exists when entities within the association share profits or costs. Following are examples of profit and cost sharing that would not create a network:

   a. Sharing immaterial costs
   b. Sharing costs related to operating the association
   c. Sharing costs related to the development of audit methodologies, manuals, and training courses
   d. Arrangements between a firm and an otherwise unrelated entity to jointly provide a service or develop a product

.11  Sharing a common business strategy. This characteristic exists when entities within the association share a common business strategy. Sharing a common business strategy involves ongoing collaboration among the firms whereby the firms are responsible for implementing the association’s strategy and held accountable for performance pursuant to that strategy. An entity’s ability to pursue an alternative strategy may be
limited by the common business strategy because, as a member, it must act in accordance with the common business strategy and, therefore, in the best interest of the association.

.12 An entity is not considered to be a *network firm* merely because it cooperates with another entity solely to market *professional services* or responds jointly to a request for a proposal for the provision of a *professional service*.

.13 *Sharing significant professional resources.* This characteristic exists when entities within the association share a significant part of professional resources. *Members* should consider both qualitative and quantitative factors in determining whether the shared professional resources are significant.

.14 Examples of professional resources include the following:

   a. Common systems that enable *firms* to exchange information, such as *client* data, billing, and time records

   b. *Partners* and staff

   c. Technical departments to consult on technical or industry-specific issues, transactions, or events for assurance engagements

   d. Audit methodology or audit manuals

   e. Training courses and facilities

.15 When shared professional resources involve the exchange of *client* information or personnel, such as when staff are drawn from a shared pool or a common technical department is created within the association to provide participating *firms* with technical advice that the *firms* are required to follow, a reasonable and informed third party who is aware of the relevant information would be expected to conclude that the shared professional resources are significant.

.16 When the entities within the association do not share a significant amount of human resources (for example, a *firm* occasionally uses personnel of another member *firm* to assist with an engagement, such as observing a *client’s* physical inventory count) or significant *client* information (for example, *client* data, billing, and time records) and have the ability to make independent decisions regarding technical matters, audit methodology, training, and the like, the entities are not considered to be sharing a significant part of professional resources.

.17 When the shared professional resources are limited to a common audit methodology, audit manuals, training courses, or facilities and do not include a significant amount of human resources or *clients* or markets, the shared professional resources are not considered significant.

.18 *Sharing common quality control policies and procedures.* This characteristic exists when entities within the association are required to follow common quality control policies and procedures that the association monitors. Monitoring is the ongoing consideration and evaluation of the *firms’* systems of quality control, which enables the association to obtain reasonable assurance that the *firms’* systems of quality control are designed appropriately and operating effectively.

.19 Refer to paragraph .03d of the “Application of the AICPA Code” [0.200.020] for additional guidance. [Prior reference: paragraph .19 of ET section 101]
1.220.020 Alternative Practice Structures

.01 Members practicing public accounting in nontraditional practice structures (alternative practice structures [APS]) should apply this interpretation to determine whether they are in compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001].

.02 All such structures must be organized in a form that complies with applicable laws, rules, and regulations, the “Form of Organization and Name Rule” [1.800.001] and the related “Alternative Practice Structures” interpretation [1.810.050] of the “Form of Organization and Name Rule.”

.03 For example, in an APS, a substantial piece of the nonattest portion of a member’s practice may be conducted under public or private ownership, and the attest portion of the practice may be conducted through a separate firm that the member owns and controls.

Terminology

.04 The following terms are defined solely for the purpose of applying this interpretation:

a. APS is a form of organization in which a firm that provides attest services is closely aligned with another public or private organization that performs other professional services.

b. A covered member includes both employed and leased individuals who meet the definition of a covered member.

c. The term direct superiors includes those persons so closely associated with a partner or manager who is a covered member that such persons can directly control the partner’s or manager’s activities. For this purpose, a person who can directly control is the immediate superior of the partner or manager who has the power to direct the activities of that person so as to be able to directly or indirectly (for example, through another entity over which the direct superior can exercise significant influence) derive a benefit from that person’s activities. An example is the person who has day-to-day responsibility for the activities of the partner or manager and is in a position to recommend promotions and compensation levels. This group of persons is so closely aligned through direct reporting relationships that their interests seem to be inseparable.

d. Indirect superiors are not connected with partners and managers who are covered members through direct reporting relationships; rather, they are one or more levels above direct superiors of covered members (that is, there always is a level in between). Generally, this starts with persons in an organization structure to whom direct superiors report and go up the line from there. Indirect superiors also include the immediate family of indirect superiors.

e. Other public company entities include the public company and all entities consolidated in the public company financial statements that are not subject to the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] and its interpretations in their entirety.

f. Significant influence is having the ability to exercise significant influence over the financial, operating, or accounting policies of the entity by, for example

i. being connected with the entity as a promoter, an underwriter, a voting trustee, a general partner, or a director;

ii. being in a policy-making position, such as chief executive officer, chief operating officer, chief financial officer, or chief accounting officer; or

iii. meeting the criteria in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 323-10-15 to determine the ability of an investor to exercise such influence with respect to an entity.
**APS Model**

.05 The APS described in paragraphs .06–.07 in this section and the related chart provides an example of a structure in use at the time that this interpretation was developed. Many of the references in this interpretation are to the example, but members should apply the concepts in spirit and substance to variations of the example structure as they develop.

.06 The example APS in this interpretation is one in which an existing CPA practice (Oldfirm) is sold by its owners to another (possibly public) entity (PublicCo). PublicCo has subsidiaries or divisions, such as a bank, an insurance company, or a broker-dealer. It also has one or more professional service subsidiaries (PSS) or divisions that offer nonattest services (for example, tax, personal financial planning, and management consulting) to clients. The owners and employees of Oldfirm become employees of one of PublicCo’s subsidiaries or divisions and may provide those nonattest services. In addition, the owners of Oldfirm form a new CPA firm (Newfirm) to provide attest services. CPAs, including the former owners of Oldfirm, own a majority of Newfirm (with regard to voting and financial interests). Attest services are performed by Newfirm and supervised by its owners. The arrangement between Newfirm and PublicCo (or one of its subsidiaries or divisions) includes the lease of employees, office space, and equipment; the performance of back-office functions, such as billing and collections; and advertising. Newfirm pays a negotiated amount for these services.

.07 The chief executive of the local office of the PSS where the partners of Newfirm are employed would be a direct superior. The chief executive of the PSS itself would be an indirect superior, and there may be indirect superiors in between, such as a regional chief executive of all PSS offices within a geographic area.

![Diagram showing the APS Model](image)

**Interpretation**

.08 The “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] and interpretations normally extend only to those persons and entities included in the definition of covered members. However, in an APS environment, the self-interest, management participation, self-review, advocacy, or undue influence threats to a covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” may not be at an acceptable level unless certain safeguards are implemented by other individuals or entities.
Threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level, could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards, and independence would be impaired when the following individuals or entities fail to apply the “Independence Rule” and interpretations with respect to attest clients of Newfirm:

a. Covered members of Newfirm

b. Direct superiors of any partner or manager who is a covered member of Newfirm and entities within the APS over which such individuals can exercise significant influence

In addition, threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level, could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards, and independence would be impaired in the following circumstances:

a. Indirect superiors and other public company entities have a material relationship with an attest client of Newfirm that is prohibited by the “Overview of Financial Interests” interpretation [1.240.010], the “Trustee or Executor” interpretation [1.245.010], the “Loans” interpretation [1.260.010], or the “Joint Closely Held Investments” interpretation [1.265.020] of the “Independence Rule” (for example, investments, loans, and so on). In making the test for materiality for financial relationships of an indirect superior, all the financial relationships with an attest client held by that person should be aggregated and, to determine materiality, assessed in relation to the person’s net worth. In making the materiality test for financial relationships of other public company entities, all the financial relationships with an attest client held by such entities should be aggregated and, to determine materiality, assessed in relation to the consolidated financial statements of PublicCo.

b. Any other public company entity over which an indirect superior has direct responsibility has a financial relationship with an attest client during the period of the professional engagement that is material in relation to the other public company entity’s financial statements.

c. Financial relationships of indirect superiors or other public company entities allow such persons or entities to exercise significant influence over the attest client during the period of the professional engagement. In making the test for significant influence, financial relationships of all indirect superiors and other public company entities should be aggregated.

d. Other public company entities or any of their employees are connected with an attest client of Newfirm as a promoter, an underwriter, a voting trustee, a director, or an officer during the period of the professional engagement or during the period covered by the financial statements.

Indirect superiors and other public company entities may provide services to an attest client of Newfirm that would impair independence if performed by Newfirm, except as noted in paragraph .10.

When Newfirm and its partners and professional employees perform attest engagements for PublicCo or any of its subsidiaries or divisions, threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level through the application of safeguards. Accordingly, independence would be impaired.

If an attest client of Newfirm holds an investment in PublicCo that is material to the attest client or that allows the attest client to exercise significant influence over PublicCo during the period of the professional engagement, threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level through the application of safeguards. Accordingly, independence would be impaired.

When making referrals of services between Newfirm and any of the entities within PublicCo, a member should consider the provisions of the “Conflicts of Interest” interpretation [1.110.010] of the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] and the “Alternative Practice Structures” interpretation [1.810.050] of the “Form of Organization and Name Rule” [1.800.001]. [Prior reference: paragraph .16 of ET section 101]
1.220.030 Use of a Nonindependent CPA Firm on an Engagement

.01 If partners or professional employees from another firm that was not independent of an attest client participate on the attest engagement team, threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level through the application of safeguards. Accordingly, the firm’s independence would be impaired.

.02 However, the firm may use the work of such individuals in a manner similar to internal auditors, provided that the firm complies with AU-C section 610, Using the Work of Internal Auditors (AICPA, Professional Standards). [Prior reference: paragraphs .142–.143 of ET section 191]

1.220.040 Firm Mergers and Acquisitions

.01 When (1) a member’s firm merges with or acquires another firm or entity or all or part of the business thereof (acquired firm) or (2) a member’s firm, or all or part of the business thereof, is merged with or acquired by another firm (acquiring firm) may exist as a result of employment or association with, or the provision of nonattest services to, an attest client of the acquired or acquiring firm.

.02 When determining which firm is the acquirer, members should consider the guidance contained in paragraphs 11–15 of FASB ASC 805-10-55, among other sources.

Employment or Association With an Attest Client

.03 If a partner or professional employee was formerly employed by or associated with an entity as a director, officer, employee, promoter, underwriter, voting trustee, trustee of any pension or profit-sharing trust of the entity, or in any capacity equivalent to that of a member of management and that entity becomes an attest client through a merger or acquisition, then threats will be at an acceptable level and independence will not be impaired provided all of the following safeguards are met:

a. The partner or professional employee terminates the relationship with the attest client (for example, resigns as a director) prior to the closing date of the merger or acquisition.

b. The partner or professional employee does not participate on the attest engagement team and is not an individual in a position to influence the attest engagement for the attest client when the attest engagement covers any period that includes his or her former employment or association with that attest client.

c. The applicable disassociation safeguards in paragraph .04 of the “Former Employment or Association With an Attest Client” interpretation [1.277.010] are implemented prior to the closing date of the merger or acquisition.

d. As soon as practicable under the circumstances but before issuing the attest report, a responsible individual within the firm assesses the prior relationship of the partner or professional employee with the attest client, as well as the position he or she holds at the firm, to determine if threats are created that are not at an acceptable level. If the responsible individual determines that threats are not at an acceptable level, he or she should be satisfied that safeguards are applied to eliminate or reduce the threats to an acceptable level. Threats will not be at an acceptable level if

i. the partner or professional employee will have interaction with members of the attest engagement team regarding the attest client or

ii. the attest engagement team is placed in a position of evaluating the partner or professional employee’s representations and work while he or she was employed or associated with the attest client.
In such situations, an individual within the **firm** with the appropriate stature, expertise, and objectivity should review the subsequent **attest engagement** prior to issuing the attest report to determine whether the **attest engagement team** maintained integrity; objectivity; and, as appropriate, professional skepticism.

*e.* As soon as practicable under the circumstances but before issuing the attest report, the nature of the relationship and any **safeguards** that were applied are discussed with those charged with governance. Documentation of the substance of the discussion with those charged with governance is encouraged.

**Nonattest Services**

.04 Nonattest services provided to an entity that becomes an **attest client** through a merger or an acquisition may create self-review, management participation, and advocacy threats to the member’s compliance with the “**Independence Rule**” [1.200.001]. Specifically, threats may exist if, during the period of the professional engagement or the period covered by the financial statements, nonattest services that would otherwise impair independence (prohibited nonattest services) under the interpretations of the “**Nonattest Services**” subtopic [1.295] are performed by

- the acquiring firm, with respect to an **attest client** of the acquired firm or
- the acquired firm, with respect to an **attest client** of the acquiring firm.

**Prohibited Nonattest Services Provided by Acquiring Firm**

.05 If the acquiring firm provided prohibited nonattest services to an **attest client** of the acquired firm during the period covered by the financial statements, threats to compliance with the “**Independence Rule**” [1.200.001] will not be at an acceptable level and cannot be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards. Accordingly, the acquiring firm’s independence will be impaired with respect to the **attest client**.

**Prohibited Nonattest Services Provided by Acquired Firm**

.06 If the acquired firm provided prohibited nonattest services to an **attest client** of the acquiring firm prior to the financial statement period covered by the acquiring firm’s next attest report, the acquiring firm’s independence would not be impaired.

.07 If the acquired firm provided prohibited nonattest services to an **attest client** of the acquiring firm during the period of the professional engagement (except as provided for in paragraph .06) or the period covered by the financial statements, the acquiring firm’s independence would be impaired unless all of the following conditions are satisfied:

- The acquired firm terminates the prohibited nonattest services (or modifies the service offerings such that they would not impair independence) prior to the closing date of the merger or acquisition.
- Any individual who participated in the engagement to provide the prohibited nonattest services is neither on the **attest engagement team** nor an individual in a position to influence the attest engagement.
- An evaluation of the threats is performed and threats are determined to be at an acceptable level or reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards. The evaluation should be conducted on the basis of the attribution of the results of the nonattest services to the acquiring firm. That is, if the nonattest services
  - can be attributed to the acquiring firm because the acquiring firm will assume responsibility for the results of the nonattest services, then the evaluation should assess all prohibited nonattest services that the acquired firm performed for the **attest client** during the financial statement period to be covered by the acquiring firm’s next attest report; or
ii. cannot be attributed to the acquiring firm, then the evaluation should assess all prohibited nonattest services that the acquired firm performed for the *attest client* during the period in which the merger or acquisition was pending (that is, from the commencement of negotiations through the closing date of the merger or acquisition).

.08 In evaluating the significance of any threats, consideration should also be given to the following:

a. Whether the nonattest service is attributed to the acquiring firm and whether the work performed or its results will be subject to attest procedures.

b. The significance of the results of the nonattest service to the *attest client’s financial statements*.

c. The extent to which the *attest client* and its management were involved in overseeing the nonattest services performed (including making any significant judgments and decisions with respect to the nonattest services) and whether the *attest client* and its management possessed the suitable skill, knowledge and/or experience to oversee such services.

d. Whether the nonattest services involved the assumption of a management responsibility.

.09 If the member concludes that the threats to independence are not at an acceptable level, the member should apply safeguards to reduce threats to an acceptable level.

.10 Examples of safeguards include the following:

a. An individual not associated with the nonattest engagement reviews the nonattest services work performed.

b. Another firm performs an attest engagement on the subject matter of the nonattest service.

c. Another firm re-performs the nonattest service to the extent necessary for it to take responsibility for that service.

If no safeguards exist that will eliminate or reduce the threats to an acceptable level, independence will be impaired.

*Communications With Those Charged With Governance*

.11 As soon as practicable under the circumstances but before issuing the attest report, the nature of the prohibited nonattest services performed by the acquired firm that are subject to evaluation in paragraph .07c and any safeguards applied should be discussed with those charged with governance. Documentation of the substance of the discussion with those charged with governance is encouraged.

*Other Interests in and Relationships With an Attest Client*

.12 This interpretation addresses only threats to independence that may arise as a result of a merger or an acquisition relating to employment or association with, or the provision of nonattest services to, an *attest client*. However other interests in, and relationships with, an *attest client* may also result in threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] or other rules during a merger or acquisition. Accordingly, members should take whatever pre-merger actions are necessary to be satisfied that the firm is in compliance with all relevant rules prior to the closing date of the merger or acquisition.

*Confidentiality Considerations*


*Effective Date*
This interpretation is effective for mergers or acquisitions with closing dates on or after January 31, 2016. Early implementation is allowed.

1.224 Affiliates, Including State and Local Government Affiliates

1.224.010 Client Affiliates

.01 Financial interests in, and other relationships with, affiliates of a financial statement attest client may create threats to a member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001].

.02 When a client is a financial statement attest client, members should apply the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] and related interpretations applicable to the financial statement attest client to their affiliates, except in the following situations:

a. During the period of the professional engagement, a covered member may have a loan to or from an

i. officer or director of an affiliate of a financial statement attest client, unless the officer or director has the ability to affect the decision-making at the financial statement attest client.

ii. individual with a beneficial ownership interest (known through reasonable inquiry) in an affiliate of a financial statement attest client, unless the ownership interest gives the individual significant influence over the financial statement attest client.

b. A member or the member’s firm may provide prohibited nonattest services to entities described under items c–l of the definition of affiliate during the period of the professional engagement or during the period covered by the financial statements, provided that it is reasonable to conclude that the services do not create a self-review threat with respect to the financial statement attest client because the results of the nonattest services will not be subject to financial statement attest procedures. For any other threats that are created by the provision of the nonattest services that are not at an acceptable level (in particular, those relating to management participation), the member should apply safeguards to eliminate or reduce the threats to an acceptable level.

c. A firm will only have to apply the “Subsequent Employment or Association With an Attest Client” interpretation [1.279.020] of the “Independence Rule” if the former employee, by virtue of his or her employment at an entity described under items c–l of the definition of affiliate, is in a key position with respect to the financial statement attest client. Individuals in a position to influence the attest engagement and on the attest engagement team who are considering employment with an affiliate of a financial statement attest client will still need to report consideration of employment to an appropriate person in the firm and remove themselves from the financial statement attest engagement, even if the position with the affiliate is not a key position.

d. A covered member’s immediate family members and close relatives may be employed in a key position at an entity described under items c–l of the definition of affiliate during the period of the professional engagement or during the period covered by the financial statements, provided they are not in a key position with respect to the financial statement attest client.

e. A covered member who is an individual on the attest engagement team, an individual in a position to influence the attest engagement, or the firm may have a lease that does not meet the requirements of the “Leases” interpretation [1.260.040] under the “Independence Rule” with an entity described under items c–l of the definition of affiliate during the period of the professional engagement. The covered member should use the “Conceptual Framework for Independence” to evaluate whether any threats created by the lease are at an acceptable level. If the covered member concludes that threats are not at an acceptable level, the covered member should apply safeguards to eliminate the threats or reduce them to an acceptable level.

f. A member or member’s firm may enter into a staff augmentation arrangement with entities described under items (c)–(l) of the definition of affiliate during the period of the professional engagement.
or during the period covered by the financial statements. The member should use the “Conceptual Framework for Independence” to evaluate whether any threats created by the staff augmentation arrangement are at an acceptable level. If the member concludes that threats are not at an acceptable level, the member should apply safeguards to eliminate the threats or reduce them to an acceptable level. If safeguards are not available or cannot be applied to eliminate or reduce the threats to an acceptable level, the member should not enter into the staff augmentation arrangement.

.03 A member must expend best efforts to obtain the information necessary to identify the affiliates of a financial statement attest client. If, after expending best efforts, a member is unable to obtain the information to determine which entities are affiliates of a financial statement attest client, threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired if the member (a) discusses the matter, including the potential impact on independence, with those charged with governance; (b) documents the results of that discussion and the efforts taken to obtain the information; and (c) obtains written assurance from the financial statement attest client that it is unable to provide the member with the information necessary to identify the affiliates of the financial statement attest client.

.04 This interpretation does not apply with respect to a financial statement attest client that is covered by the “State and Local Government Client Affiliates” interpretation [1.224.020] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001]. [Prior reference: paragraph .20 of ET section 101]

Acquisition or Other Transaction Involving a Financial Statement Attest Client or Its Affiliates That Results in the Creation of a New Affiliate

.05 An entity may become a new affiliate of an existing financial statement attest client because of an acquisition or other transaction. A threat to independence and, therefore, to the ability of a member or member’s firm to continue a financial statement attest engagement might be created by previous or current interests or relationships between the member or member’s firm and the new affiliate. Paragraphs .06-.13 provide guidance on how independence is affected when such interests in or relationships with a new affiliate exist.

An Existing Financial Statement Attest Client Is Acquired and the Member or Member’s Firm Will Not Continue Providing Financial Statement Attest Services to Such Client After the Current Attest Report Is Issued and the Report Does Not Cover Periods After the Effective Date of the Acquisition

.06 When a member or member’s firm has an interest in or relationship with an acquirer that may impair independence as a result of the requirements of this interpretation, independence with respect to the financial statement attest client will not be considered impaired if all the following conditions are met:

   a. The acquisition occurs during the period of the professional engagement.

   b. The financial statement attest engagement covers only periods prior to the effective date of the acquisition.

   c. The member or member’s firm will not continue to provide financial statement attest services to the existing financial statement attest client for periods after the effective date of the acquisition.

An Existing Financial Statement Attest Client or Its Affiliate Is Involved in an Acquisition or Other Transaction and the Member or Member’s Firm Expects to Continue Providing Financial Statement Attest Services to Such Client

.07 When an acquisition or other transaction creates a new affiliate of a financial statement attest client during the period of the professional engagement and the member or member’s firm expects to continue providing financial statement attest services to the financial statement attest client after the effective date of the acquisition or other transaction, the following conditions should be met:

   a. The member or member’s firm should identify and evaluate previous and current interests in and relationships with the new affiliate, including actions taken to address the threat to independence,
that might affect independence and therefore the member’s or member’s firm’s ability to continue the financial statement attest engagement after the effective date of the acquisition or other transaction.

b. Except as provided for in paragraph .08, the member or member’s firm should take steps to end any interests in or relationships with the new affiliate that would impair independence by the effective date of the acquisition or other transaction.

.08  As an exception to paragraph .07b, if the interest in or relationship with the new affiliate cannot reasonably be ended by the effective date of the acquisition or other transaction (for example, the new affiliate is not able to transition a nonattest service in an orderly manner to another service provider by that date), the member or member’s firm should do the following:

a. Evaluate the threat to independence that is created by the interest or relationship. Factors that are relevant in evaluating the significance of a threat when there are interests and relationships with a new affiliate that cannot reasonably be ended could include these:

i. The nature and significance of the interest or relationship

ii. The nature and significance of the affiliate relationship (for example, whether the affiliate is a subsidiary, parent, or sister entity)

iii. The length of time until the interest or relationship can reasonably be ended

b. Discuss with those charged with governance the evaluation of the significance of threat and the reasons that the interest or relationship cannot reasonably be ended by the effective date of the acquisition or other transaction.

.09  Following the discussion in paragraph .08b, if those charged with governance request the member or member’s firm to continue to provide financial statement attest services to the financial statement attest client, the member or member’s firm should do so only under the following circumstances:

a. The interest in or relationship with the new affiliate that would impair independence will end as soon as reasonably possible but no later than six months after the effective date of the acquisition or other transaction.

b. Any individual who has such an interest in or relationship with the new affiliate, including one that has arisen through performing a nonattest service that would impair independence under the “Nonattest Services” subtopic [1.295] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001], will not be a member of the attest engagement team or an individual responsible for the engagement quality control review.

c. Safeguards will be applied, as necessary, and discussed with those charged with governance.

An Existing Financial Statement Attest Client or Its Affiliate Is Involved in an Acquisition or Other Transaction and the Member or Member’s Firm Will Complete the Existing Financial Statement Attest Engagement but Will Not Continue Providing Such Services After the Current Attest Report Is Issued but the Report May Cover Periods After the Effective Date of the Acquisition or Other Transaction

.10  When a member or member’s firm will not continue to provide financial statement attest services to the financial statement attest client that is involved in an acquisition or other transaction, the member or member’s firm may issue the current report covering a period after the effective date of the acquisition or other transaction if all the following conditions are met:

a. The member or member’s firm completed a significant amount of work on the current financial statement attest engagement prior to the effective date of the acquisition or other transaction. Whether a significant amount of work has been completed will depend upon the remaining procedures as compared to the overall engagement procedures.
b. The member or member’s firm expects to complete the remaining financial statement attest procedures and issue the attest report within a reasonable period of time. A reasonable period of time will be dependent upon facts and circumstances.

c. Those charged with governance request that the member or member’s firm complete the financial statement attest engagement despite the member or member’s firm continuing to have an interest in or relationship with the new affiliate that will impair independence.

d. The member or member’s firm has evaluated the significance of the threat to independence and discussed the results with those charged with governance.

e. The member or member’s firm complies with the requirements of paragraph .09b–c.

f. The member or member’s firm ceases to be the auditor no later than the date that the attest report is issued.

Other Considerations When an Existing Financial Statement Attest Client or Its Affiliate Is Involved in an Acquisition or Other Transaction

.11 Objectivity. Even if all the requirements of paragraphs .06–.10 could be met, the member or member’s firm should consider whether the requirements of the “Conflicts of Interest for Members in Public Practice” interpretation [1.110.010] under the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] are applicable, with regard to any circumstances identified in paragraphs .06, .07, or .10.

.12 Documentation. The member or member’s firm should consider documenting the following:

a. Any interests or relationships identified in paragraphs .07 or .10 that will not be ended by the effective date of the acquisition or other transaction and the reasons they will not be ended

b. The safeguards applied, if appropriate

c. The results of the discussion with those charged with governance

d. The reasons the previous and current interests and relationships do not create a threat that will compromise objectivity

.13 Circumstances involving foreign network firms. A member should refer to paragraph .03 of “Application of the AICPA Code” [0.200.020] for guidance on circumstances involving foreign network firms.

Effective Date

.14 Paragraphs .01–.04 are effective for engagements covering periods beginning on or after January 1, 2014. Early implementation is allowed.

[See Revision History Table.]


1.224.020 State and Local Government Client Affiliates

Applicability

.01 This interpretation applies to state and local government entities (as defined in paragraph .03d of this interpretation) that are financial statement attest clients.
.02 When an interpretation of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] is applied in a state or local government environment and the interpretation uses terminology that is not applicable in this environment, the member should use professional judgment to determine if there is an equivalent term. For example, certain interpretations use the phrase “officer, director, or owner of the attest client.” In some state or local government environments, it may be necessary for the member to extend these interpretations to officials of the financial statement attest client when the official has governance responsibilities or control over financial reporting.

Terminology

.03 The following terms are defined here solely for use with this interpretation:

a. An affiliate of a financial statement attest client exists in all the following situations:

   i. The entity is included in the financial statement attest client’s financial statements and the member or member’s firm does not make reference to another auditor’s report on the entity.

   ii. The entity is included in the financial statement attest client’s financial statements, the member or member’s firm makes reference to another auditor’s report on the entity, and

      (1) the entity is material to the financial statement attest client’s financial statements as a whole and

      (2) the financial statement attest client has more than minimal influence over the entity’s accounting or financial reporting process. There is a rebuttable presumption that the financial statement attest client has more than minimal influence over the accounting or financial reporting process of funds and blended component units.

   iii. The entity is a material excluded entity, and the financial statement attest client has more than minimal influence over the entity’s accounting or financial reporting process. A material excluded entity is an entity that is required under the applicable financial reporting framework to be included in the financial statements of the financial statement attest client but is, nevertheless, excluded by the financial statement attest client and is material to the financial statement attest client’s financial statements as a whole. There is a rebuttable presumption that the financial statement attest client has more than minimal influence over the accounting or financial reporting process of funds and blended component units.

   iv. The investor, which is either the financial statement attest client or an affiliate as defined in item (i) of this definition, has an investment in an investee when the investor either

      (1) controls the investee, unless the investment in the investee is trivial and clearly inconsequential to the financial statement attest client’s financial statements as a whole, or

      (2) has significant influence over the investee and the investment in the investee is material to the financial statement attest client’s financial statements as a whole.

b. An entity is intended to be broadly defined and can include funds, component units, departments, agencies, programs, organizational units, fiduciary activities, custodial activities, employee benefit plans, and suborganizational units of the preceding entities.

c. An investment is a security or other asset that an investor, which is either the financial statement attest client or an affiliate, as defined in item (a) of this paragraph, holds primarily for the purpose of income or profit and has a present-service capacity based solely on its ability to generate cash or to be sold to generate cash. This includes investments and ownership of an equity interest in common stock accounted for using the equity method of accounting as provided for in GASB Codification Section I50. The following interests are not considered investments for purposes of this interpretation:
i. Interests obtained by an investor as a result of an action by a third party, such as through a bequest or a grant, and that the investor does not intend to retain and does not retain for more than a reasonable period of time given the temporary nature of the investment

ii. Equity interests in joint ventures, partnerships, LLCs, or other types of entities where the investor’s principal purpose is to directly enhance its ability to provide governmental services

iii. Equity interests in component units where the investor’s principal purpose is to directly enhance its ability to provide governmental services

iv. Interests that would otherwise be considered an entity as defined in item (b) of this paragraph

d. State and local government entities are entities whose generally accepted accounting principles standard setter is GASB. Examples of state and local government entities include general purpose governments and special purpose governments. Examples of general purpose governments include states, counties, cities, towns, villages, and Indian tribes. Examples of special purpose governments include cemetery districts, school districts, universities and colleges, utilities, hospitals or other health care organizations, public airports, public housing authorities, financing authorities, public transportation systems, public employee retirement systems (PERSs), post-employment benefit plans, pension plans, public-entity risk pools, external investment pools, state tuition programs, and other special districts.

Interpretation

.04 Financial interests in, and other relationships with, affiliates of a financial statement attest client may create threats to a member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule.”

.05 Members should apply the “Independence Rule” and related interpretations applicable to a financial statement attest client to their affiliates except as provided for in paragraph .07 of this interpretation.

.06 However, if the member encounters circumstances or relationships that may create threats to independence, the member should apply the “Conceptual Framework for Independence” [1.210.010] to evaluate whether threats are at an acceptable level. Examples of such circumstances or relationships could include the following:

a. A covered member’s immediate family member is in a key position with a nonaffiliate that includes the financial statement attest client in its financial statements and the nonaffiliate provides accounting staff, shares financial information systems, or establishes internal controls over financial reporting for the financial statement attest client.

b. The member or member’s firm is considering providing financial information system design services to a nonaffiliate in which the same financial information system would also be used by the financial statement attest client.

c. A covered member has a financial interest in a nonaffiliate that includes the financial statement attest client in its financial statements, and the nonaffiliate prepares the financial statements for the financial statement attest client.

d. The financial statement attest client participates in a public-private partnership or joint venture that does not meet the definition of an investment in paragraph .03 of this interpretation. A covered member has a financial interest in an organization that is also involved with the public-private partnership or joint venture.

e. A covered member owns utility bonds issued by a nonaffiliate, and the financial statement attest client is responsible for payment of the utility bond debt service.
Part 1 — Members in Public Practice

f. A covered member owns conduit debt issued by the financial statement attest client on behalf of a nonaffiliate. The conduit debt is not accounted for on the financial statements of the financial statement attest client, and the debt service is paid by the nonaffiliate.

Exception

.07 The member and member's firm may provide prohibited nonattest services to entities described under items (a(iii)) and (a(iii)) of paragraph .03 during the period of the professional engagement or during the period covered by the financial statements provided that it is reasonable to conclude that the services do not create a self-review threat with respect to the financial statement attest client because the results of the nonattest services will not be subject to the covered member's financial statement attest procedures. For any other threats created by the provision of the nonattest services that are not at an acceptable level (in particular, those relating to management participation), the member should apply safeguards to eliminate or reduce the threats to an acceptable level.

Best Efforts

.08 A member must expend best efforts to obtain the information necessary to identify affiliates of a financial statement attest client. If, after expending best efforts, a member is unable to obtain the information to determine which entities are affiliates of a financial statement attest client, threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired if the member

a. discusses the matter, including the potential impact on independence, with those charged with governance;

b. documents the results of that discussion and the efforts taken to obtain the information; and

c. obtains written assurance from the financial statement attest client that it is unable to provide the member with the information necessary to identify the affiliates of the financial statement attest client.

More Than Minimal Influence Over Accounting and Financial Reporting Process

.09 The overall facts and circumstances should be considered when evaluating the level of influence the financial statement attest client has over the accounting or financial reporting process of an entity in the financial statement attest client's financial statements. The targeted analysis is applied solely to the accounting and financial reporting process of the entity as opposed to the analysis of what entities are included in the financial statement attest client’s financial statements. Factors such as the following may assist members with this evaluation:

a. The extent of involvement the financial statement attest client has in preparing the financial statements of the entity

b. The extent of operational control the financial statement attest client has over the entity

c. The extent to which both the financial statement attest client and the entity have the same

i. accounting or finance staff;

ii. accounting systems; and

iii. internal control over financial reporting systems

d. The extent to which the financial statement attest client

i. can direct the behaviors or actions of the governing board of the entity;

ii. can add or remove members of the governing board of the entity;
iii. issues or pays for the entity’s debt;
iv. finances the entity’s deficits; and
v. uses or takes the entity’s financial resources.

Whereas some factors may indicate influence, others may indicate little to no influence. Some factors may be weighted differently depending on the circumstances and the subject matter of any potential impairment. Members should take a substantive approach to evaluating the factors (for example, the financial statement attest client exercises a right) rather than merely considering form (for example, the financial statement attest client has a right that is not exercised). The consideration of these factors will require the member to exercise professional judgment when determining whether more than minimal influence exists.

Material to the Financial Statement Attest Client’s Financial Statements as a Whole

Determination of materiality is a matter of professional judgment. Members should consider both quantitative and qualitative factors when determining whether an entity or investment is material to a financial statement attest client’s financial statements as a whole. For purposes of this interpretation, materiality is intended to be applied at the level of the financial statement attest client’s financial statements, rather than individual opinion units in circumstances in which there may be more than one opinion unit.

[See Revision History Table.]


1.226 Reissued Reports

1.226.010 Consenting to the Use of a Previously Issued Report

A member or member’s firm who was in compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] when initially issuing a report may reissue the previously issued report or consent to, or acknowledge the inclusion or incorporation by reference of, the report when the member or member’s firm’s independence is impaired, provided that the member or member’s firm does not perform procedures that require updating the date or dual dating the report.

In order to consent to, or acknowledge the inclusion or incorporation by reference of, a previously issued report, the member or member’s firm may perform procedures required by applicable professional standards when the member’s or member’s firm’s independence is impaired. Such procedures include making inquiries of successor auditors, reading the subsequent financial statements, or other procedures that the member believes are necessary to assess the effect of subsequently discovered facts on the financial statements covered by the previously issued report. [Prior reference: paragraphs .200–.201 of ET section 191]

1.228 Engagement Contractual Terms

1.228.010 Indemnification of a Covered Member

Threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would be at an acceptable level and a covered member’s independence would not be impaired if the covered member includes in engagement
letters a clause that provides that its attest client would release, indemnify, defend, and hold the covered member (and the covered member’s partners, heirs, executors, personal representatives, successors, and assigns) harmless from any liability and costs resulting from knowing misrepresentations by management. [Prior reference: paragraphs .188–.189 of ET section 191]

.02 Refer to the “Indemnification and Limitation of Liability Provisions” interpretation [1.400.060] of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [1.400.001].

1.228.020 Indemnification of an Attest Client

.01 Threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards if the covered member enters into an agreement providing, among other things, that the covered member indemnifies the attest client for damages, losses, or costs arising from lawsuits, claims, or settlements that relate, directly or indirectly, to the attest client’s acts. The covered member’s independence would be impaired under these circumstances. [Prior reference: paragraphs .204–.205 of ET section 191]

1.228.030 Alternative Dispute Resolution

.01 A covered member may include in an engagement letter a provision to use alternative dispute resolution (ADR) techniques to resolve disputes relating to past services (in lieu of litigation). Threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired because the covered member and attest client would not be in positions of material adverse interests due to threatened or actual litigation.

.02 The covered member should exercise professional judgment when rendering current services, regardless of the existence of the provision. [Prior reference: paragraphs .190–.191 of ET section 191]

.03 If ADR techniques are initiated to resolve a dispute with the attest client, threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would be at an acceptable level when the ADR techniques are designed to facilitate negotiation, and the conduct of those negotiations does not place the covered member and the attest client in positions of material adverse interests. Independence would not be impaired under these circumstances. If, however, the ADR proceedings are sufficiently similar to litigation (as in the case of binding arbitration), an adverse interest threat may exist and place the covered member and the attest client in a position of material adverse interests. Under such circumstances, the member should apply the guidance under the “Actual or Threatened Litigation” interpretation [1.290.010] of the “Independence Rule.” [Prior reference: paragraphs .192–.193 of ET section 191]

1.230 Fees

A nonauthoritative question and answer regarding pro bono and below cost fees is available in the Ethics FAQ at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadabledocuments/ethics-general-faqs.pdf.

1.230.010 Unpaid Fees

.01 The existence of unpaid fees to a covered member for professional services previously rendered to an attest client may create self-interest or undue influence threats to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001]. Unpaid fees include fees that are unbilled or a note receivable arising from such fees.

.02 Factors to consider when evaluating whether threats are at an acceptable level include the following:

a. The significance of the unpaid fees to the covered member

b. The length of time the fees have been due from the attest client
c. The attest client’s agreement to pay the unpaid fees

d. The covered member’s assessment of factors affecting the ability of the attest client to pay the fees

Threats to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] are at an acceptable level if, when the current-year attest report is issued, unpaid fees are both clearly insignificant to the covered member and relate to professional services provided less than one year prior to the date of the current-year attest report. Alternatively, threats would not be at an acceptable level if, when the current-year attest report is issued, unpaid fees are both significant to the covered member and relate to professional services provided more than one year prior to the issue date of the current-year attest report. Other situations may require judgment to assess whether there are threats to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule.”

If the covered member concludes that threats are not at an acceptable level, then the covered member should apply safeguards to eliminate the threats or reduce them to an acceptable level. Application of more than one safeguard may be required to eliminate or reduce threats to an acceptable level. If safeguards are not available or cannot be applied to eliminate or reduce the threats to an acceptable level, then independence would be impaired. Examples of actions that might be safeguards include the following:

a. Have an appropriate reviewer who has not provided attest or nonattest services to the attest client review the attest work performed before the current-year attest report is issued.

b. Obtain partial payment of the unpaid fees balance before the current-year attest report is issued such that the remaining unpaid balance is insignificant to the covered member.

c. Obtain an agreement from the attest client to a payment schedule before the current-year attest report is issued.

d. Suspend further work on current attest engagements and not accept new engagements with this attest client.

Communication with those charged with governance regarding evaluation of the unpaid fees and safeguards applied is not a sufficient safeguard when applied alone; however, it may be considered a safeguard when supplemented by other safeguard(s), such as those noted in paragraph .04a–d.

This interpretation does not apply to unpaid fees from an attest client in bankruptcy. [Prior reference: paragraphs .103–.104 of ET section 191]

Refer to the “Fees and Other Types of Remuneration” topic [1.500] for additional guidance.

[See Revision History Table.]

1.230.020 Fees and Other Types of Remuneration

See the “Fees and Other Types of Remuneration” topic [1.500] for guidance on contingent fees, commissions, and referral fees. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

Effective December 15, 2014.

1.240 Financial Interests

1.240.010 Overview of Financial Interests

If a covered member had or was committed to acquire any direct financial interest in an attest client during the period of the professional engagement, the self-interest threat to the covered member’s compliance
with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards. Accordingly, independence would be impaired. [Prior reference: paragraphs .02A(1) and .17 of ET section 101]

.02 If a covered member had or was committed to acquire any material indirect financial interest in an attest client during the period of the professional engagement, the self-interest threat to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards. Accordingly, independence would be impaired. [Prior reference: paragraphs .02A(1) and .17 of ET section 101]

.03 If a partner or professional employee of the firm, his or her immediate family, or any group of such persons acting together owned more than 5 percent of an attest client’s outstanding equity securities or other ownership interests during the period of the professional engagement, the self-interest threat to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards. Accordingly, independence would be impaired. [Prior reference: paragraph .02B of ET section 101]

.04 Refer to the “Joint Closely Held Investments” interpretation [1.265.020] for additional guidance.

1.240.020 Unsolicited Financial Interests

.01 When a covered member becomes aware that he or she will receive, or has received, an unsolicited financial interest in an attest client during the period of the professional engagement, such as through a gift or an inheritance, the self-interest threat would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired if both of the following safeguards are met:

a. The covered member disposes of the financial interest as soon as practicable but no later than 30 days after the covered member has knowledge of and obtains the right to dispose of the financial interest.

b. The covered member does not participate on the attest engagement team during the period in which the covered member does not have the right to dispose of a material direct financial interest or material indirect financial interest. [Prior reference: paragraph .17 of ET section 101]

[See Revision History Table.]

1.240.030 Mutual Funds

.01 A covered member who owns shares in a mutual fund has a direct financial interest in the mutual fund. However, whether the underlying investments in the mutual fund are considered to be the covered member’s direct financial interests or indirect financial interests depends on the proportion of the mutual fund’s outstanding shares that the covered member owns and whether the mutual fund is diversified.

.02 If a covered member owns 5 percent or less of the outstanding shares of a diversified mutual fund, the underlying investments would be considered immaterial indirect financial interests. Accordingly, the self-interest threat would be at an acceptable level, and independence would not be impaired. To determine if the mutual fund is diversified, the covered member should consider referring to (a) the mutual fund’s prospectus for disclosure regarding fund management’s determination regarding diversification and (b) Section 5(b)(1) of the Investment Company Act of 1940.

.03 If a covered member owns more than 5 percent of a diversified mutual fund’s outstanding shares, or if a covered member owns a financial interest in a nondiversified mutual fund, the covered member should evaluate the mutual fund’s underlying investments to determine whether the covered member holds a material indirect financial interest in any of the underlying investments.

.04 The following example illustrates how to determine if the underlying investments are material to a covered member’s net worth. If
• a nondiversified mutual fund owns shares in client company A,

• the mutual fund’s net assets are $10 million,

• the covered member owns 1 percent of the outstanding shares of the mutual fund, having a value of $100,000, and

• the mutual fund has 10 percent of its assets invested in company A,

then the covered member’s indirect financial interest in company A is $10,000 ($100,000 × 10%). The covered member would then compare the $10,000 indirect financial interest with his or her net worth, including the net worth of his or her immediate family, to determine if the indirect financial interest in company A is material. [Prior reference: paragraph .17 of ET section 101]

1.240.040 Retirement, Savings, Compensation, or Similar Plans

.01 Depending upon the facts and circumstances, financial interests held in a retirement, savings, compensation, or similar plan are either direct financial interests or indirect financial interests.

.02 Investments held by a retirement, savings, compensation, or similar plan sponsored by a firm are direct financial interests of the firm.

.03 If a covered member or his or her immediate family self-directs the investments in a retirement, savings, compensation, or similar plan or has the ability to supervise or participate in the plan’s investment decisions, the financial interests held by the plan are direct financial interests of the covered member. For example,

a. when a covered member or his or her immediate family member is a trustee of a retirement, savings, compensation, or similar plan or otherwise has the authority to supervise or participate in the plan’s investment decisions (including through the selection of investment managers or pooled investment vehicles), the underlying investments are direct financial interests of the covered member.

b. for self-directed or participant-directed plans (that is, the covered member or his or her immediate family member selects the underlying plan investments or selects from investment alternatives offered by the plan), the underlying investments are direct financial interests of the covered member.

.04 When the covered member or his or her immediate family do not participate in a self-directed or participant-directed plan and have no authority to supervise or participate in the plan’s investment decisions, the underlying investments would be considered to be indirect financial interests of the covered member.

.05 Financial interests held by a defined benefit plan are not considered financial interests of the covered member unless the covered member or his or her immediate family member is a trustee of the plan or otherwise has the ability to supervise or participate in the plan’s investment decisions.

.06 Allocated shares held in an employee stock ownership plan (ESOP) are considered beneficially owned by the covered member. Until the covered member or his or her immediate family member has the right to dispose of the allocated shares of the ESOP, the beneficial ownership is considered an indirect financial interest. Once the participant has the right to dispose of the financial interests, the financial interests are direct financial interests of the covered member.

.07 Rights to acquire equity interests, restricted stock awards, or other share-based compensation arrangements are considered the direct financial interests of the covered member, regardless of whether such financial interests are vested or exercisable.

.08 See the “Plan Is an Attest Client or Is Sponsored by an Attest Client” interpretation [1.250.010] and the “Former Employment or Association With an Attest Client” interpretation [1.277.010] of the

1.240.050 Partnerships

.01 When used in this interpretation, control includes situations in which the covered member has the ability to exercise such control, either individually or acting together with his or her firm or other partners or professional employees of his or her firm.

.02 The ownership of a general or limited partnership interest is considered a direct financial interest in the partnership.

.03 General partner. If the covered member is a general partner, the financial interests held by a partnership are a covered member’s direct financial interests because the covered member is in a position to control the partnership or supervise or participate in the partnership’s investment decisions.

.04 Limited partner. If the covered member is a limited partner, the financial interests held by a limited partnership are a covered member’s indirect financial interests as long as the covered member does not control the partnership or supervise or participate in the partnership’s investment decisions. However, if the covered member has the ability to replace the general partner or has the authority to supervise or participate in the partnership’s investment decisions, the partnership’s financial interests would be the covered member’s direct financial interests.

.05 Refer to the “Client Affiliates” interpretation [1.224.010] [1.200.001] and the “Joint Closely Held Investments” interpretation [1.265.020] of the “Independence Rule” for additional guidance. [Prior reference: paragraph .17 of ET section 101]

1.240.060 Limited Liability Companies

.01 When used in this interpretation, control includes situations in which the covered member has the ability to exercise such control, either individually or acting together with his or her firm or other partners or professional employees of his or her firm.

.02 Ownership of an interest in a limited liability company (LLC) is a direct financial interest in the LLC.

.03 In an LLC, managing members control the LLC and have the authority to supervise or participate in the LLC’s investment decisions. Accordingly, if a covered member is a manager of the LLC, the financial interests of the LLC are the covered member’s direct financial interests. When a covered member is not a managing member of the LLC, the covered member should review the LLC’s operating agreement to determine whether he or she can control the LLC or has the authority to supervise or participate in the LLC’s investment decisions. In situations in which the covered member does not control the LLC and does not have the authority to supervise or participate in the LLC’s investment decisions, the financial interests held by the LLC are the covered member’s indirect financial interests. [Prior reference: paragraph .17 of ET section 101]

1.240.070 Section 529 Plans

.01 Section 529 plans are sponsored by states or higher education institutions and may be prepaid tuition plans or savings plans. An account owner establishes both types of plans for the benefit of a single beneficiary. The account owner may change the beneficiary at any time to another individual who is a relative of the previous beneficiary.

.02 Prepaid tuition plan. A covered member who is the account owner of a Section 529 prepaid tuition plan is considered to have a direct financial interest in the plan. The account owner does not have any financial interests in the plan’s underlying investments because the credits purchased represent an obligation of the state or educational institution to provide the education regardless of the plan’s investment performance or the cost of the education at the future date.
Part 1 — Members in Public Practice

.03 Savings plan. A covered member who is the account owner of a Section 529 savings plan is considered to have a direct financial interest in both the plan and the plan’s underlying investments because the account owner elects which sponsor’s Section 529 savings plan to invest in, and prior to making the investment decision, the covered member has access to information about the plan’s investment options or funds. However, if the Section 529 savings plan does not hold financial interests in an attest client at the time of the investment but the plan subsequently invests in that attest client, the financial interest threat would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired if the covered member applies both of the following safeguards:

   a. The covered member transfers the account to another sponsor’s Section 529 savings plan.

   b. The covered member transfers the account to another account owner who is not a covered member.

When the transfer of the account will result in a penalty or tax that is significant to the account, the covered member may continue to own the account until the account can be transferred without significant penalty or tax, provided that the covered member does not participate on the attest engagement team and is not an individual in a position to influence the attest engagement.

.04 Beneficiary of Section 529 account. A covered member who is a beneficiary of a Section 529 account is not considered to have a financial interest in the plan or the plan’s underlying investments because the covered member does not own the account or possess any of the underlying benefits of ownership. The beneficiary’s only interest is to receive distributions from the account for qualified higher education expenses if and when they are authorized by the account owner.

.05 Government or governmental entity sponsors Section 529 plan. Before becoming engaged to perform an attest engagement for a government or governmental entity that sponsors a Section 529 plan, covered members who are account owners of a Section 529 plan should consider the guidance in the “State and Local Government Client Affiliates” interpretation [1.224.020]. [Prior reference: paragraph 1.17 of ET section 101]

1.245 Trusts and Estates

1.245.010 Trustee or Executor

.01 The designation of a covered member to serve as a trustee of a trust or an executor or administrator of an estate that held, or was committed to acquire, any direct financial interest or any material indirect financial interest in an attest client during the period of the professional engagement does not in itself create a self-interest threat to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001]. [Prior reference: paragraphs .021–.022 of ET section 191]

.02 However, when the covered member serves as the trustee or executor during the period of the professional engagement, threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards if

   a. the covered member (individually or with others) has the authority to make investment decisions for the trust or estate,

   b. the trust or estate owned or was committed to acquire more than 10 percent of the attest client’s outstanding equity securities or other ownership interests, or

   c. the value of the trust’s or estate’s holdings in the attest client exceeds 10 percent of the total assets of the trust or estate.

Accordingly, in these situations, independence would be impaired. [Prior reference: paragraph .02A(2) of ET section 101]
1.245.020 Trust Investments

.01 When used in this interpretation, control includes situations in which the covered member has the ability to exercise such control, either individually or acting together with his or her firm or other partners or professional employees of his or her firm.

.02 When a covered member is a grantor of a trust, including a blind trust, the trust and its underlying investments are considered to be the covered member’s direct financial interest if any of the following rights or responsibilities exist:

a. The covered member has the ability to amend or revoke the trust.

b. The covered member has authority to control the trust.

c. The covered member has ability to supervise or participate in the trust’s investment decisions.

d. The underlying trust investments will ultimately revert to the covered member as the grantor of the trust.

However, the trust and the trust’s underlying investments are not considered to be financial interests of a covered member if the covered member is the grantor of the trust and the covered member does not have any of the rights or responsibilities in items a–d.

.03 When a covered member is only a beneficiary of a trust and does not have any of the rights or responsibilities noted in paragraph .02, the trust is considered to be the direct financial interest of the covered member, and the trust’s underlying investments are considered to be indirect financial interests of the covered member. [Prior reference: paragraph .17 of ET section 101]

Effective Date

.04 This revised interpretation is effective December 15, 2014.

A nonauthoritative question and answer regarding the use of blind trusts is available at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadeddocuments/ethics-general-faqs.pdf.

1.250 Participation in Employee Benefit Plans

1.250.010 Plan Is an Attest Client or Is Sponsored by an Attest Client

.01 When a covered member participates in an employee benefit plan that is an attest client or is sponsored by an attest client, during the period of the professional engagement or during the period covered by the financial statements, the self-interest threat to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level. Independence with respect to the employee benefit plan and the sponsor would be impaired except in the following specific situations:

a. Governmental organization. When a covered member is an employee of a governmental organization that sponsors, cosponsors, or participates with other governmental organizations in a public employee retirement plan (the plan) and the covered member is required by law, rule, or regulation to audit the plan, threats to independence would be at an acceptable level if all of the following safeguards are met:

i. The covered member is required to participate in the plan as a condition of employment.

ii. The plan is offered to all employees in comparable employment positions.

iii. The covered member is not associated with the plan in any capacity prohibited by the “Simultaneous Employment or Association With an Attest Client” interpretation [1.275.005] of the “Independence Rule.”
iv. The covered member has no influence or control over the investment strategy, benefits, or other management activities associated with the plan.

b. Former employment or association with the attest client. The requirements of paragraph .04 of the “Former Employment or Association With an Attest Client” interpretation [1.277.010] must be met. [Prior reference: paragraphs .214–.215 of ET section 191]

.02 When an immediate family member participates as a result of his or her employment, in an employee benefit plan that is an attest client or is sponsored by an attest client, the requirements of the “Immediate Family Member Participation in an Employee Benefit Plan That Is an Attest Client or Is Sponsored by an Attest Client (Other Than Certain Share-Based Arrangements or Nonqualified Deferred Compensation Plans)” interpretation [1.270.030] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] must be met. [Prior reference: paragraph .17 of ET section 101]

1.250.020 Former Partners and Professional Employees Participation in a Firm-Sponsored Plan

.01 When partners and professional employees leave a firm and are subsequently employed by, or associated with, an attest client of the firm in a key position, the requirements of paragraph .02–c of the “Subsequent Employment or Association With an Attest Client” interpretation [1.279.020] must be met to reduce the familiarity, self-interest, or management participation threats to an acceptable level. [Prior reference: paragraph .04 of ET section 101]

1.255 Depository, Brokerage, and Other Accounts

1.255.010 Depository Accounts

.01 If a covered member maintains checking, savings, certificates of deposit, money market, or other depository accounts (depository accounts) at a bank or similar depository institution that is an attest client during the period of the professional engagement, a self-interest threat to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist. For specific guidance applicable to any other types of custodial accounts (for example, brokerage accounts), see the “Brokerage and Other Accounts” interpretation [1.255.020] of the “Independence Rule.”

.02 When the covered member is a firm, the threat would be at an acceptable level, and independence would not be impaired if the firm concludes that the likelihood is remote that the bank or similar depository institution will experience financial difficulties.

.03 When the covered member is an individual, the threat would be at an acceptable level, and independence would not be impaired if

a. the balance in the depository account(s) is fully insured by the appropriate state or federal government deposit insurance agencies or by any other insurer, or

b. any uninsured amounts, in the aggregate, were not material to the covered member’s net worth, or

c. if uninsured amounts were considered material, any uninsured amounts, in the aggregate, are reduced to an immaterial amount no later than 30 days from the date that the uninsured amount becomes material to the covered member’s net worth.

.04 Refer to the “Member of a Credit Union” interpretation [1.280.040] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] for additional guidance. [Prior reference: paragraphs .140–.141 of ET section 191]

1.255.020 Brokerage and Other Accounts

.01 If an attest client in the financial services industry, such as an insurance company, an investment adviser, a broker-dealer, a bank, or similar depository institution, has custody of a covered member’s assets other than
depository accounts, including retirement plan assets, during the period of the professional engagement, a self-interest threat to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist. For specific guidance applicable to depository accounts held at a bank or similar depository institution, see the “Depository Accounts” interpretation [1.255.010] of the “Independence Rule.”

.02 Threats would not be at an acceptable level and independence would be impaired unless the following safeguards are met

a. The attest client’s services were rendered under the attest client’s normal terms, procedures, and requirements.

b. Any covered member’s assets subject to the risk of loss are immaterial to the covered member’s net worth.

.03 In determining if there is a risk of loss, the covered member should consider losses arising from the attest client’s insolvency, bankruptcy, or acts of fraud or other illegal acts but should not consider potential losses arising from a market decline in the value of the assets.

.04 When considering the materiality of assets subject to the risk of loss, the covered member should consider the following:

a. Protection that state or federal regulators provide for the assets, such as state insurance funds

b. Private insurance or other forms of protection that the financial services company obtains to protect its customers’ assets, such as coverage by the Securities Investor Protection Corporation

c. Protection from creditors, such as assets held in a pooled separate account or separate escrow accounts [Prior reference: paragraphs .081–.082 of ET section 191]

1.257 Insurance Products

1.257.010 Insurance Policies With No Investment Option

.01 An insurance policy obtained from a stock or mutual insurance company that does not offer the policy holder an investment option is not considered a financial interest.

.02 If during the period of the professional engagement, a covered member owns an insurance policy with no investment option issued by an attest client, a self-interest threat to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist. Threats would not be at an acceptable level, and could not be reduced to an acceptable level through the application of safeguards, if the covered member purchased the policy not under the normal terms, procedures, and requirements. Accordingly, independence would be impaired. [Prior reference: paragraph .17 of ET section 101]

1.257.020 Insurance Policies With Investment Options

.01 If during the period of the professional engagement the covered member owns an insurance policy with investment options issued by an attest client, but the covered member did not purchase the policy under the insurance company’s normal terms, procedures, and requirements, threats would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards. Accordingly, independence would be impaired.

.02 When a covered member purchases an insurance policy, under the insurance company’s normal terms, procedures, and requirements, which offers an investment option that allows the covered member to invest part of the policy’s cash value in various investment products, the policy’s underlying investments are considered to be financial interests of the covered member. Accordingly, a self-interest threat to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist.
Part 1 — Members in Public Practice

.03 If the *covered member* has the ability to select the policy’s underlying investments or the authority to supervise or participate in the investment decisions and the *covered member* invests in an *attest client* during the *period of the professional engagement*, *threats* to compliance with the “**Independence Rule**” [1.200.001] would not be at an *acceptable level* and could not be reduced to an *acceptable level* by the application of *safeguards*. Accordingly, *independence* would be *impaired* because the investment would be considered a *direct financial interest*. For example, if the *covered member* invested the policy’s cash value into a mutual fund that is an *attest client*, the investment in the mutual fund would be considered a *direct financial interest* and *independence* would be *impaired*. However, the mutual fund’s underlying investments are considered to be *indirect financial interests*.


1.257.030 Insurer Undergoes Demutualization

.01 If a mutual insurance company begins demutualization, a *covered member* who holds an insurance policy from the insurer should apply the guidance in the “**Unsolicited Financial Interests**” interpretation [1.240.020] of the “**Independence Rule**” [1.200.001]. [Prior reference: paragraph .17 of ET section 101]

1.260 Loans, Leases, and Guarantees

1.260.010 Loans

.01 If a *covered member* has a *loan* to or from an *attest client*, any officer or director of the *attest client* with the ability to affect decision-making, or any individual with a *beneficial ownership interest* (known through reasonable inquiry) that gives the individual *significant influence* over the *attest client*, a *self-interest threat* to the *covered member*’s compliance with the “**Independence Rule**” [1.200.001] may exist. *Threats* would not be at an *acceptable level* and *independence* would be *impaired* if the *loan* exists during the *period of the professional engagement*, except as provided for in the

a. “**Loans and Leases With Lending Institutions**” interpretation [1.260.020] of the “**Independence Rule**.”

b. “**Client Affiliates**” interpretation [1.224.010] of the “**Independence Rule**.”

[See **Revision History Table**.]

1.260.020 Loans and Leases With Lending Institutions

.01 The “**Loans**” interpretation [1.260.010] of the “**Independence Rule**” [1.200.001] provides that a self-interest *threat* would not be at an *acceptable level* and *independence* would be *impaired* if a *covered member* had a *loan* to or from an *attest client*, any officer or director of the *attest client* with the ability to affect decision-making, or any individual with a *beneficial ownership interest* (known through reasonable inquiry) that gives the individual *significant influence* over the *attest client*, except as provided for in this interpretation.

**Home Mortgages, Other Secured Loans, Immaterial Unsecured Loans, and Student Loans**

.02 The *loans* covered by paragraph .03 include home mortgages, other secured *loans*, unsecured *loans* that are not material to the *covered member*’s net worth (that is, immaterial unsecured *loans*), and student *loans*.

.03 *Threats* would be at an *acceptable level* and *independence* would not be *impaired* if a *covered member* or his or her *immediate family* has any of the *loans* identified in paragraph .02 from a lending institution *attest client*, if all the following *safeguards* are met:
a. The loans were obtained under the lending institution’s normal lending procedures, terms, and requirements.

b. The loans were obtained in one of the following ways (in determining when the loans were obtained, the date a commitment or line of credit is granted must be used, rather than the date a transaction closes or funds are obtained):

i. From the lending institution prior to it becoming an attest client

ii. From a lending institution for which independence was not required and that was later sold to an attest client

iii. From a lending institution attest client by a borrower prior to the member becoming a covered member with respect to that attest client

iv. Prior to May 31, 2002, and the requirements of the loan transition provision in https://us.aicpa.org/content/dam/aicpa/interestareas/professionalethics/community/downloadabledocuments/transistion%20periods.pdf are met

c. After an individual becomes a covered member, any loans must be kept current regarding all terms, at all times, and the terms may not change in any manner not provided for in the original agreement. Examples of changed terms are a new or extended maturity date, a new interest rate or formula, revised collateral, and revised or waived covenants.

d. The estimated fair value of the collateral for home mortgages or other secured loans should equal or exceed the outstanding balance during the term of the home mortgages or other secured loans. If the estimated fair value of the collateral is less than the outstanding balance of the home mortgages or other secured loans, the portion that exceeds the estimated fair value of the collateral may not be material to the covered member’s net worth.

Loans to Partnerships and Other Similar Entities

.04 For purposes of applying the loan provision in paragraph .03 when the covered member is a partner in a partnership, a loan to a limited partnership (or similar type of entity) or general partnership would be ascribed to each covered member who is a partner in the partnership on the basis of his or her legal liability as a limited or general partner if

a. the covered member’s interest in the limited partnership, either individually or combined with the interest of one or more covered members, exceeds 50 percent of the total limited partnership interest, or

b. the covered member, either individually or together with one or more covered members, can control the general partnership.

Even if no amount of a partnership loan is ascribed to the covered member(s) previously identified, threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level through the application of safeguards if the partnership renegotiates a loan or obtains a new loan that is not a permitted loan, as described in paragraph .05 of this interpretation. Accordingly, independence would be impaired.

Other Loans and Leases

.05 Threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired if a covered member obtains one of the following types of loans or leases under the lending institution’s normal lending procedures, terms, and requirements, provided the covered member complies with the terms of the loan or lease agreement at all times (for example, keeping payments current):
a. Automobile loans and leases collateralized by the automobile

b. Loans fully collateralized by the cash surrender value of an insurance policy

c. Loans fully collateralized by cash deposits at the same lending institution (for example, passbook loans)

.06 Threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired if a covered member has consumer loans (for example, credit cards, retail installment loans, and home improvement loans) and overdraft reserve accounts from the same lending institution that have an aggregate outstanding balance of $10,000 or less on a current basis, taking into consideration the payment due date and any available grace period.

Other Matters

.07 Members should consider that certain state and federal agencies may proscribe more restrictive requirements over lending institutions that are subject to their oversight and that, in turn, impose more restrictive requirements upon members that perform attest engagements for these lending institutions. For example, the SEC proscribes more restrictive requirements over members providing attest services to lending institutions and broker-dealers within their purview. [Prior reference: paragraph .07 of ET section 101 and paragraphs .150–.151 of ET section 191]

.08 Covered members may be subject to additional restrictions, as described in the “Depository Accounts” interpretation [1.255.010], the “Member of a Credit Union” interpretation [1.280.040], and the “Leases” interpretation [1.260.040] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001].

[See Revision History Table.]

1.260.030 Servicing of a Loan

.01 The self-interest threat to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired if a lending institution attest client services a loan originally extended to a covered member by another lending institution. [Prior reference: paragraphs .134–.135 of ET section 191]

1.260.040 Leases

.01 When a covered member enters into or has a lease with an attest client, self-interest, familiarity, and undue influence threats to the covered member's compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist.

New or Renegotiated Leases

.02 If a covered member who is an individual on the attest engagement team, an individual in a position to influence the attest engagement, or the firm enters into a lease or renegotiates terms of an existing lease with an attest client during the period of the professional engagement, threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards. Independence would be impaired, unless all of the following safeguards are met at the time of entering into or renegotiating the lease:

   a. The lease is on market terms and established at arm’s length.

   b. The lease is not material to any of the parties to the lease. When evaluating materiality, all leases between the covered member and the attest client should be considered in the aggregate.

.03 Once the covered member enters into or renegotiates the lease, threats to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced
to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards, and independence would be impaired if the lease amounts are not paid in accordance with the lease terms or provisions by the due date or within any available grace periods during the period of the professional engagement.

Existing Leases

.04 Under the circumstances in paragraph .05, the covered member should evaluate the significance of any threats to determine whether the threats are at an acceptable level. If the covered member determines that threats are not at an acceptable level, the covered member should apply safeguards to eliminate or reduce the threats to an acceptable level. If no safeguards are available to eliminate or reduce threats to an acceptable level, independence would be impaired.

.05 A covered member who is an individual on the attest engagement team, an individual in a position to influence the attest engagement, or the firm has a lease with an attest client that was

a. entered into or renegotiated prior to the
   i. period of the professional engagement,
   ii. member becoming a covered member, or
   iii. counterparty becoming an attest client or an affiliate of a financial statement attest client, or

b. entered into or renegotiated during the period of the professional engagement, in compliance with paragraph .02, but, due to a change in circumstances after the lease is entered into or renegotiated, the lease becomes material to any party to the lease during the period of the professional engagement.

.06 The significance of the threats will depend on factors such as the following:

a. The role of the covered member on the attest engagement or with the firm

b. The materiality of the lease to the covered member or the attest client during the period of the professional engagement

c. Whether multiple leases exist with the attest client and, if so, the aggregate materiality of those leases to the covered member or the attest client

d. The extent to which the lease will be subject to attest procedures or financial statement disclosures

e. The duration of the lease term

f. Whether the lease is on market terms or established at arm’s length

.07 However, threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards, and independence would be impaired, if the lease amounts are not paid in accordance with the lease terms or provisions by the due date or within any available grace periods during the period of the professional engagement.

Applicability

.08 This interpretation excludes leases addressed by paragraph .04 of the “Loans and Leases With Lending Institutions” interpretation [1.260.020] under the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001].


.10 This interpretation is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2020, with early implementation allowed.
1.260.050 Association With an Entity That Has a Loan To or From an Attest Client

.01 If a covered member is an officer, a director, or a shareholder of an entity and the entity has a loan to or from an attest client during the period of the professional engagement, a self-interest threat to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist. Threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards if the covered member has control over the entity. Accordingly, independence would be impaired because the lease would be considered to be a loan with an attest client. This paragraph excludes a lending relationship that is permitted under the “Loans and Leases With Lending Institutions” interpretation [1.260.020] of the “Independence Rule.”

.02 If any partner or professional employee of the firm is an officer, a director, or a shareholder of an entity and the entity has a loan to or from an attest client, threats to the partner’s or professional employee’s objectivity may exist. If the partner or professional employee is able to exercise significant influence over the entity but is not a covered member who can control the entity (see paragraph .01), the partner or professional employee should consider the “Conflicts of Interest” interpretation [1.110.010] of the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001].

.03 When making the decision about whether to perform a professional service and in making disclosure to the appropriate parties, the member should consider the “Confidential Client Information Rule” [1.700.001]. [Prior reference: paragraphs .220–.221 of ET section 191]

1.265 Business Relationships

1.265.010 Cooperative Arrangements With Attest Clients

.01 If a member or his or her firm has a cooperative arrangement with an attest client, self-interest, familiarity, and undue influence threats to the member or his or her firm’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist. Threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards if, during the period of the professional engagement, the cooperative arrangement is material to the firm or attest client. Accordingly, independence would be impaired.

.02 A cooperative arrangement exists when a member or the member’s firm and an attest client jointly participate in a business activity. However, a cooperative arrangement would not exist when all of the following safeguards are met:

a. The participation of the firm and attest client are governed by separate agreements, arrangements, or understandings that do not create rights or obligations between the firm and attest client.

b. Neither the firm nor the attest client assumes responsibility for the other’s activities or results.

c. Neither party has the authority to act as the other’s representative or agent.

.03 Examples of cooperative arrangements include the following:

a. Prime and subcontractor arrangements to provide services or products to a third party

b. Joint ventures to develop or market products or services

c. Arrangements to combine one or more of the firm’s services or products with one or more of the attest client’s services or products and market the package with references to both parties

d. Arrangements under which the firm acts as a distributor or marketer of the attest client’s products or services or the attest client acts as the distributor or marketer of the firm’s products or services
.04 Refer to the “Contingent Fees Rule” [1.510.001] and the “Commissions and Referral Fees Rule” [1.520.001] for additional guidance. [Prior reference: paragraph .14 of ET section 101]

1.265.020 Joint Closely Held Investments

.01 If a covered member has a joint closely held investment, a self-interest threat to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist. Threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards if the covered member holds a material joint closely held investment during the period of the professional engagement. Accordingly, independence would be impaired. [Prior reference: paragraph .02A(3) of ET section 101]

.02 A joint closely held investment includes a joint interest in a vacation home shared by a covered member and an attest client (or one of the client’s officers or directors, or any owner who has the ability to exercise significant influence over the attest client), if the covered member and attest client (or one of the client’s officers or directors or any owner who has the ability to exercise significant influence over the attest client) control the investment and the vacation home is material to the covered member. Such is the case even if the vacation home is solely intended for the personal use of the owners. [Prior reference: paragraphs .184–.185 of ET section 191]

1.270 Family Relationships With Attest Clients

1.270.010 Immediate Family Members

.01 The immediate family of a covered member must comply with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] and its interpretations, except as permitted in the following interpretations:

a. “Immediate Family Member Is Employed by the Attest Client” [1.270.020]

b. “Immediate Family Member Participation in an Employee Benefit Plan That Is an Attest Client or Is Sponsored by an Attest Client (Other Than Certain Share-Based Arrangements or Nonqualified Deferred Compensation Plans)” [1.270.030]

c. “Immediate Family Member Participation in an Employee Benefit Plan With Financial Interests in an Attest Client” [1.270.040]

d. “Immediate Family Member Participation in Share-Based Compensation Arrangements Resulting in Beneficially Owned Financial Interests in Attest Clients” [1.270.050]

e. “Immediate Family Member Participation in Share-Based Compensation Arrangements Resulting in Rights to Acquire Shares in an Attest Client” [1.270.060]

f. “Immediate Family Member Participation in Share-Based Compensation Arrangements Based Upon Stock Appreciation” [1.270.070]

g. “Immediate Family Member Participation in a Nonqualified Deferred Compensation Plan” [1.270.080]

.02 Notwithstanding any exceptions provided for in paragraph .01, the ownership interests of a covered member’s immediate family may not exceed those specified in paragraph .03 of the “Overview of Financial Interests” interpretation [1.240.010] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001].

.03 When materiality of a financial interest or a loan is identified as a factor affecting independence in the interpretations of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001], interests of the immediate family member and the covered member should be combined to determine materiality to the covered member. [Prior reference: paragraph .02 of ET section 101]
A nonauthoritative white paper, *Independence Rules Modernization Project*, provides some discussion on changes made to the independence provisions that are applicable to close relatives. The white paper is available at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadabledocuments/independencemodernizationwhitepaper.doc.

A nonauthoritative basis-for-conclusions document summarizing considerations that were deemed significant in the development of this interpretation is available at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadabledocuments/basisforconclusionsimmediatefamilymember6-1-10final.doc.

1.270.020 Immediate Family Member Is Employed by the Attest Client

.01 When an individual in a covered member’s immediate family is employed by an attest client, management participation, familiarity, and self-interest threats to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist.

.02 If a covered member’s immediate family is employed by an attest client but is not in a key position, threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired.

.03 If a covered member’s immediate family is in a key position with an attest client during the period covered by the financial statements or during the period of the professional engagement, threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards. Accordingly, independence would be impaired.

Grandfathered Employment Relationships

.04 For information about grandfathered employment relationships for immediate family members, refer to https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/community/downloadabledocuments/transistion %20periods.pdf. [Prior reference: paragraph .02 of ET section 101]
b. The plan is offered to all employees in comparable employment positions.

c. The immediate family member does not serve in a position of governance (for example, board of trustees) for the plan.

d. The immediate family member does not have the ability to supervise or participate in the plan’s investment decisions or in the selection of the investment options made available to plan participants.

[Prior reference: paragraph .02 of ET section 101]

.02 Share-based compensation arrangements and nonqualified deferred compensation plans are discussed in the following interpretations:


b. “Immediate Family Member Participation in Share-Based Compensation Arrangements Resulting in Rights to Acquire Shares in an Attest Client” interpretation [1.270.060] of the “Independence Rule”

c. “Immediate Family Member Participation in Share-Based Compensation Arrangements Based Upon Stock Appreciation” interpretation [1.270.070] of the “Independence Rule”


A nonauthoritative basis-for-conclusions document that summarizes considerations that were deemed significant in the development of this interpretation is available at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadabledocuments/basisforconclusionsimmediatefamilymember6-1-10final.doc.

1.270.040 Immediate Family Member Participation in an Employee Benefit Plan With Financial Interests in an Attest Client

.01 If during the period of the professional engagement, an immediate family member of a covered member is employed at a nonclient or employed in a non-key position at an attest client, the immediate family member may hold a direct financial interest or material indirect financial interest in an attest client through participation in an employee benefit plan if threats are at an acceptable level. Threats would be at an acceptable level, and independence would not be impaired, if all of the following safeguards were met:

a. The covered member neither participates on the attest engagement team nor is an individual in a position to influence the attest engagement.

b. Such investment is an unavoidable consequence of such participation. Unavoidable consequence means that the immediate family member has no other investment options available for selection, including money market or invested cash options, except for selecting an investment option in an attest client.

c. In the event that a plan provides an option that permits the immediate family member to invest in a nonattest client or a nonclient investment option that becomes available, the immediate family member is required to select the investment option in the nonclient or nonattest client and dispose of financial interests in the attest client as soon as practicable but no later than 30 days after such option becomes available. When legal or other similar restrictions exist on an immediate family member’s right to dispose of a financial interest at a particular time, the immediate family member need not dispose of the interest until the restrictions have lapsed. For example, an immediate family member is not required to dispose of a financial interest in an attest client if doing so would violate an employer’s policies on insider trading. On the other hand, waiting for more advantageous
market conditions to dispose of the interest would not fall within this exception. [Prior reference: paragraph .02 of ET section 101]

This paragraph excludes participation in *share-based compensation arrangements* and nonqualified deferred compensation arrangements (see paragraph .02).

**.02 Share-based compensation arrangements** and nonqualified deferred compensation plans are discussed in the following interpretations:


b. “Immediate Family Member Participation in Share-Based Compensation Arrangements Resulting in Rights to Acquire Shares in an Attest Client” interpretation [1.270.060] of the “Independence Rule”

c. “Immediate Family Member Participation in Share-Based Compensation Arrangements Based Upon Stock Appreciation” interpretation [1.270.070] of the “Independence Rule”


*1.270.050 Immediate Family Member Participation in Share-Based Compensation Arrangements Resulting in Beneficially Owned Financial Interests in Attest Clients*

.01 If during the period of the professional engagement, an immediate family member of a covered member participates in a share-based compensation arrangement of an attest client, such as an ESOP, that results in the immediate family member holding a financial interest in an attest client that is beneficially owned, threats are at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired if all of the following safeguards were met:

a. The immediate family member does not serve in a key position for the attest client, as discussed in the “Immediate Family Member Is Employed by the Attest Client” interpretation [1.270.020] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001].

b. The covered member neither participates on the attest engagement team nor is an individual in a position to influence the attest engagement.

c. The immediate family member does not serve as a trustee for the share-based compensation arrangement and does not have the ability to supervise or participate in the selection of any investment options made available to plan participants.

d. When the financial interests that are beneficially owned are distributed or the immediate family member has the right to dispose of the financial interests, the immediate family member is required to do one of the following:

i. Dispose of the financial interests as soon as practicable but no later than 30 days after he or she has the right to dispose of the financial interests.

ii. Exercise his or her put option to require the employer to repurchase the financial interests as soon as permitted by the terms of the share-based compensation arrangement. In addition, any repurchase obligation due to the immediate family member arising from exercise of the
option that is outstanding for more than 30 days needs to be immaterial to the covered member during the payout period. When legal or other similar restrictions exist on an immediate family member’s right to dispose of a financial interest at a particular time, the immediate family member need not dispose of the interest until the restrictions have lapsed. For example, an immediate family member does not have to dispose of a financial interest in an attest client if doing so would violate an employer’s policies on insider trading. On the other hand, waiting for more advantageous market conditions to dispose of the interest does not qualify for this exception.

e. Benefits payable from the share-based compensation arrangement to the immediate family member upon termination of employment, whether through retirement, death, disability, or voluntary or involuntary termination, are funded by investment options other than the employer’s financial interests, and any unfunded benefits payable are immaterial to the covered member at all times during the payout period. [Prior reference: paragraph .02 of ET section 101]

A nonauthoritative basis-for-conclusions document that summarizes considerations that were deemed significant in the development of this interpretation is available at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadabledocuments/basisforconclusionsimmediatefamilymember6-1-10final.doc.

1.270.060 Immediate Family Member Participation in Share-Based Compensation Arrangements Resulting in Rights to Acquire Shares in an Attest Client

.01 If during the period of the professional engagement an immediate family member of a covered member participates in a share-based compensation arrangement resulting in a right to acquire shares in an attest client, such as an ESOP or restricted stock rights plan, threats are at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired if all of the following safeguards were met:

a. The immediate family member does not serve in a key position for the attest client, as discussed in the “Immediate Family Member Is Employed by the Attest Client” interpretation [1.270.020] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001].

b. The covered member neither participates on the attest engagement team nor is an individual in a position to influence the attest engagement.

c. The immediate family member exercises or forfeits these rights once he or she is vested, and the closing market price of the underlying stock equals or exceeds the exercise price for 10 consecutive days (market period). The exercise or forfeiture should occur as soon as practicable but no later than 30 days after the end of the market period. In addition, if the immediate family member exercises his or her right to acquire shares in the attest client, he or she should dispose of the shares as soon as practicable but no later than 30 days after the exercise date. Also, note the following:

i. When legal or other similar restrictions exist on an immediate family member’s right to dispose of a financial interest at a particular time, the immediate family member need not dispose of the interest until the restrictions have lapsed. For example, an immediate family member does not have to dispose of a financial interest in an attest client if doing so would violate an employer’s policies on insider trading. On the other hand, waiting for more advantageous market conditions to dispose of the interest would not qualify for this exception.

ii. If the employer repurchases the shares, any employer repurchase obligation due to the immediate family member that is outstanding for more than 30 days needs to be immaterial to the covered member during the payout period.

.02 Refer to paragraph .06 of the “Retirement, Savings, Compensation, or Similar Plans” interpretation [1.240.040] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] for additional guidance. [Prior reference: paragraph .02 of ET section 101]
1.270.070 Immediate Family Member Participation in Share-Based Compensation Arrangements Based Upon Stock Appreciation

.01 If during the period of the professional engagement an immediate family member of a covered member participates in a share-based compensation arrangement based on the appreciation of an attest client’s underlying shares, such as a stock appreciation plan or phantom stock plan, threats are at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired if all of the following safeguards were met:

   a. The immediate family member does not serve in a key position for the attest client, as discussed in the “Immediate Family Member Is Employed by the Attest Client” interpretation [1.270.020] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001].

   b. The share-based compensation arrangement does not provide for the issuance of rights to acquire the employer’s financial interests.

   c. The covered member neither participates on the attest engagement team nor is an individual in a position to influence the attest engagement.

   d. The immediate family member exercises or forfeits these rights once he or she is vested, if the underlying price of the employer’s shares equals or exceeds the exercise price for 10 consecutive days (market period). Exercise or forfeiture should occur as soon as practicable but no later than 30 days after the end of the market period.

   e. Any resulting compensation payable to the immediate family member that is outstanding for more than 30 days is immaterial to the covered member during the payout period. [Prior reference: paragraph .02 of ET section 101]
1.270.100 Close Relatives

.01 When a close relative of a covered member is employed by an attest client or has financial interests in an attest client, management participation, familiarity, and self-interest threats to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist.

.02 Threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards, and independence would be impaired, if an individual participating on the attest engagement team has a close relative who has either of the following:

a. A key position with the attest client during the period covered by the financial statements or during the period of the professional engagement.

b. A financial interest in the attest client during the period of the professional engagement that
   i. the individual knows or has reason to believe was material to the close relative or
   ii. enabled the close relative to exercise significant influence over the attest client.

.03 Threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards and independence will be impaired if an individual in a position to influence the attest engagement or any partner or partner equivalent in the office in which the lead attest engagement partner or partner equivalent primarily practices in connection with the attest engagement has a close relative who has either of the following:

a. A key position with the attest client during the period covered by the financial statements or during the period of the professional engagement.

b. A financial interest in the attest client during the period of the professional engagement that
   i. the individual, partner, or partner equivalent knows or has reason to believe was material to the close relative and
   ii. enabled the close relative to exercise significant influence over the attest client.

Grandfathered Employment Relationships

.04 For information about grandfathered employment relationships for close relatives, refer to https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/community/downloadabledocuments/transistion%20periods.pdf. [Prior reference: paragraph .02 of ET section 101]

Effective Date

.05 The addition of partner equivalents to paragraph .03 is effective for engagements covering periods beginning on or after December 15, 2014.

A nonauthoritative white paper, Independence Rules Modernization Project, provides some discussion about changes made to the independence provisions that are applicable to close relatives. The white paper is available at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadabledocuments/independencemodernizationwhitepaper.doc.
1.275 Current Employment or Association With an Attest Client

1.275.005 Simultaneous Employment or Association With an Attest Client

.01 In this interpretation, simultaneous employment or association with an attest client is serving as a director, an officer, an employee, a promoter, an underwriter, a voting trustee, a trustee for any pension or profit-sharing trust of the attest client, or in any capacity equivalent to that of a member of management of an attest client during the period covered by the financial statements or the period of the professional engagement.

.02 If a partner or professional employee of the member’s firm is simultaneously employed or associated with an attest client, familiarity, management participation, advocacy, or self-review threats to the member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards. Accordingly, independence would be impaired. [Prior reference: paragraph .02C of ET section 101]

.03 However, threats will be at an acceptable level and independence will not be impaired when either of the following situations exists:

   a. A partner or professional employee of a firm serves as an adjunct faculty member of an educational institution that is an attest client of the firm and the partner or professional employee meets all of the following safeguards:

      i. Does not hold a key position at the educational institution

      ii. Does not participate on the attest engagement team

      iii. Is not an individual in a position to influence the attest engagement

      iv. Is employed by the educational institution on a part-time and non-tenure basis

      v. Does not participate in any employee benefit plans sponsored by the educational institution, unless participation is required

      vi. Does not assume any management responsibilities or set policies for the educational institution

   Upon termination of employment, the partner or professional employee should comply with the requirements of the “Former Employment or Association With an Attest Client” interpretation [1.277.010] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001]. [Prior reference: paragraph .21 of ET section 101]

   b. A member in a government audit organization performs an attest engagement with respect to the government entity and the head of the government audit organization meets at least one of the following:

      i. Is directly elected by voters of the government entity with respect to which attest engagements are performed

      ii. Is appointed by a legislative body and is subject to removal by a legislative body

      iii. Is appointed by someone other than the legislative body, as long as the appointment is confirmed by the legislative body and removal is subject to oversight or approval by the legislative body

.04 Members that are simultaneously employed or associated with an attest client should consider their obligations as a member in business under part 2 of the code. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date
Paragraph .04 of this interpretation is effective December 15, 2014.

A nonauthoritative question and answer regarding independent contractors retained by the firm who are simultaneously employed or associated with an attest client is available at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadabledocuments/ethics-general-faqs.pdf.

[See Revision History Table.]

1.275.007 Staff Augmentation Arrangements

.01 In this interpretation, staff augmentation arrangements involve lending firm personnel (augmented staff) to an attest client whereby the attest client is responsible for the direction and supervision of the activities performed by the augmented staff. Under such arrangements, the firm bills the attest client for the activities performed by the augmented staff but does not direct or supervise the actual performance of the activities.

.02 If a partner or professional employee of the member’s firm serves as augmented staff for an attest client, familiarity, management participation, advocacy, or self-review threats to the member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist. Threats would not be at an acceptable level and independence would be impaired unless all the following safeguards are met:

a. The staff augmentation arrangement is being performed due to an unexpected situation that would create a significant hardship for the attest client to make other arrangements.

b. The augmented staff arrangement is not expected to reoccur.

c. The augmented staff arrangement is performed for only a short period of time. There is a rebuttable presumption that a short period of time would not exceed 30 days.

d. The augmented staff neither participates in, nor is in a position to influence, an attest engagement covering any period that includes the staff augmentation arrangement.

e. The augmented staff performs only activities that would not be prohibited by the “Nonattest Services” subtopic [1.295] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001].

f. The member is satisfied that management of the attest client designates an individual or individuals who possess suitable skill, knowledge, and experience, preferably within senior management, to be responsible for

i. determining the nature and scope of the activities to be provided by the augmented staff;

ii. supervising and overseeing the activities performed by the augmented staff; and

iii. evaluating the adequacy of the activities performed by the augmented staff and the findings resulting from the activities.


Effective Date

.04 This interpretation is effective November 30, 2021.

[See Revision History Table.]
1.275.010 Honorary Director or Trustee of a Not-for-Profit Organization

.01 When a partner or professional employee of a member’s firm is asked to lend the prestige of his or her name to a not-for-profit organization (the assumption is that the organization limits its activities to charitable, religious, or civic or other matters of a similar nature) by serving as an honorary director or trustee of the organization during the period covered by the financial statements or during the period of the professional engagement, familiarity, self-review, or management participation threats to the member's compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist. However, threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired if all of the following safeguards are met:

  a. The position is clearly honorary and the individual holds the position in name only.

  b. The individual cannot vote or otherwise participate in board or management responsibilities.

  c. If the individual is named in letterheads and externally circulated materials, the individual is identified as an honorary director or honorary trustee. [Prior reference: paragraph .06 of ET section 101]

.02 Members that are simultaneously employed or associated with an attest client should consider their obligations as a member in business under part 2 of the code. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.03 Paragraph .02 of this interpretation is effective December 15, 2014.

1.275.015 Member of Advisory Board

.01 If a partner or professional employee of a member’s firm serves on an advisory board of an attest client, familiarity, self-review, or management participation threats to the member's compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist. However, threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired if all of the following safeguards are met:

  a. The responsibilities of the advisory board are in fact advisory in nature.

  b. The advisory board has no authority to make nor does it appear to make management decisions on behalf of the attest client.

  c. The advisory board and those having authority to make management decisions, including the board of directors or its equivalent, are distinct groups with minimal, if any, common membership. [Prior reference: paragraphs .144–.145 of ET section 191]

.02 Members in such positions should consider their obligations as members in business under part 2 of the code. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.03 Paragraph .02 of this interpretation is effective December 15, 2014.

1.275.020 Member of Governmental Advisory Committee

.01 If a partner or professional employee of the firm serves on a citizens’ advisory committee that is studying possible changes in the form of a county government that is an attest client of the member’s firm, familiarity, self-review, or management participation threats to the member's compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist. However, threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired with respect to the county.

.02 If a partner or professional employee of the firm serves on an advisory committee appointed to study the financial status of the state in which the county is located, threats to the member’s compliance with the
“Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would be at an acceptable level. Accordingly, independence would not be impaired with respect to the county. [Prior reference: paragraphs .039–.040 of ET section 191]

.03 Members in such positions should consider their obligations as members in business under part 2 of the code. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.04 Paragraph .03 of this interpretation is effective December 15, 2014.

1.275.025 Individual in a Campaign Treasurer or Similar Financial Position

.01 For purposes of this interpretation, a campaign treasurer would also include individuals with similar financial responsibilities as a campaign treasurer. While other campaign positions may result in threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001], such positions are not covered by this interpretation. Accordingly, members should consult the Conceptual Framework for Independence [1.210.010] if partners or professional employees serve in campaign positions not specifically addressed by this interpretation.

Campaign Organization Is Attest Client

.02 If during the period of the professional engagement or during the period covered by the financial statements, a partner or professional employee of a member’s firm serves as a campaign treasurer and the campaign organization is an attest client, the management participation threat to the member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards. Accordingly, independence would be impaired.

Candidate Running for Election of a Governmental Entity That Is an Attest Client

.03 If, during the period of the professional engagement or during the period covered by the financial statements, a partner or professional employee serves as a campaign treasurer for either (a) an elected official of a governmental entity that is an attest client, or (b) for a candidate who is running for election but is not yet an elected official of such attest client, then advocacy, adverse interest, and familiarity threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards. Accordingly, independence would be impaired.

Political Party Is Attest Client

.04 If during the period of the professional engagement or during the period covered by the financial statements a partner or professional employee serves as a campaign treasurer for a candidate and the political party for which the candidate is a member is an attest client, advocacy and familiarity threats may exist. Accordingly, a responsible individual within the firm should evaluate the significance of the threats to determine if the threats are at an acceptable level. If the responsible individual within the firm determines that threats are not at an acceptable level, he or she should apply safeguards to eliminate or reduce the threats to an acceptable level. However, threats would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards and independence would be impaired if the candidate is a member of one of the political party’s governing bodies.

General

.05 In the state and local government environment, members should consult the “State and Local Government Client Affiliates” interpretation [1.224.020] to determine which entities related to their attest client require the member’s independence. Also refer to the “Conflicts of Interest for Members in Public Practice” interpretation [1.110.010] of the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] for additional guidance. In addition, members in such positions should consider their obligations as members in business under part 2 of the code. [Prior reference: paragraphs .164–.165 of ET section 191]
Grandfathered Positions

.06 Independence would not be impaired as a result of the more restrictive requirements of this interpretation that are effective on May 31, 2015, provided the attest engagement commenced prior to April 30, 2015, and the member was in compliance with the preexisting requirements of this interpretation.

[See Revision History Table.]

1.275.030 Member of Federated Fund-Raising Organization

.01 When a partner or professional employee of a member’s firm serves as a director or an officer of a federated fund-raising organization, such as United Way (the organization), during the period covered by the financial statements or during the period of the professional engagement, and a charity that receives funds from the organization is an attest client of the member’s firm, management participation or self-review threats to the member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist.

.02 If the organization has managerial control over the charity, the threats to the member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards. Accordingly, independence would be impaired.

.03 Even if the organization does not have managerial control over the charity, a conflict of interest could arise that may create a threat to the member’s compliance with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001]. In such situations, the member should consult the “Conflicts of Interest” interpretation [1.110.010]. [Prior reference: paragraphs .027–.028 of ET section 191]

.04 In addition, members in such positions should consider their obligations as members in business under part 2 of the code. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.05 Paragraph .04 of this interpretation is effective December 15, 2014.

1.275.035 Member of Organization that Receives Funds From Fund-Raising Organization

.01 When a partner or professional employee of a member’s firm serves on the board of directors of an organization during the period covered by the financial statements or during the period of the professional engagement and the organization receives funds from a fund-raising foundation that is an attest client, management participation or self-review threats to the member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist.

.02 If the fund-raising foundation functions solely to raise funds for that organization, the threat to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards. Accordingly, independence would be impaired.

.03 However, if the directorship is clearly honorary, in accordance with the “Honorary Director or Trustee of a Not-for-Profit Organization” interpretation [1.275.010] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001], threats would be at an acceptable level. Accordingly, independence would not be impaired. [Prior reference: paragraphs .128–.129 of ET section 191]

.04 Members in such positions should consider their obligations as a member in business under part 2 of the code. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.05 Paragraph .04 of this interpretation is effective December 15, 2014.
1.277 Former Employment or Association With an Attest Client

1.277.010 Former Employment or Association With an Attest Client

.01 This interpretation applies to covered members who were formerly employed by an entity or associated with an entity as an officer, a director, a promoter, an underwriter, a voting trustee, or a trustee for the entity’s pension or profit sharing trust and subsequently became employed by a firm that provides attest service to that entity.

.02 When a member becomes a partner or professional employee of a firm that provides attest services to an entity where the member was formerly employed or otherwise associated, familiarity, self-interest, self-review, or management participation threats to the member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist.

.03 If a covered member participates on the client’s attest engagement or is an individual in a position to influence the attest engagement covering any period that includes the covered member’s former employment or association with the attest client, threats to the member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards. Accordingly, independence would be impaired.

.04 If a member fails to disassociate from the attest client before becoming a covered member, threats to the member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and independence would be impaired unless all of the following safeguards are met:

a. The covered member ceases to participate in all employee health and welfare plans sponsored by the attest client, unless the attest client is legally required to allow the member to participate in the plan (for example, the Consolidated Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act [COBRA]) and the member pays 100 percent of the member’s portion of the cost of participation on a current basis.

b. The covered member ceases to participate in all other employee benefit plans by liquidating or transferring, at the earliest date permitted under the plan, all vested benefits in the attest client’s defined benefit plans, defined contribution plans, share-based compensation arrangements, deferred compensation plans, and other similar arrangements. However, when a covered member’s participation in one of these plans results from former employment or association with an attest client, threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired provided the liquidation or transfer of any vested benefits is either not permitted under the terms of the plan or would result in a penalty significant to the benefits being imposed upon such liquidation or transfer and the covered member

   i. does not participate on the attest engagement team or

   ii. is not an individual in a position to influence the attest engagement.

A penalty includes an early withdrawal penalty levied under the applicable tax law but excludes other income taxes that would be owed, or market losses that may be incurred, as a result of such liquidation or transfer.

c. The covered member disposes of any direct financial interest or material indirect financial interests in the attest client.

d. The covered member collects or repays any loans to or from the attest client, except for loans specifically permitted or grandfathered by the interpretations of the “Loans, Leases, and Guarantees” subtopic [1.260] under the “Independence Rule.”

e. Covered members should evaluate whether other relationships with the attest client create threats that require the member to apply safeguards to reduce those threats to an acceptable level. [Prior reference: paragraph .02 of ET section 101]
1.279 Considering or Subsequent Employment or Association With an Attest Client

1.279.010 Considering Employment or Association With an Attest Client

01 This interpretation applies to a member of the attest engagement team or an individual in a position to influence the attest engagement (individual) who intends to seek or discuss potential employment or association with an attest client or is in receipt of a specific offer of employment from an attest client.

02 The undue influence and self-interest threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired if all of the following safeguards are met:

   a. The individual promptly reports such consideration or offer to an appropriate person in the firm.

   b. The individual immediately ceases participation in the engagement and does not provide any services to the attest client until the employment offer is rejected or employment is no longer sought.

   c. If a covered member becomes aware that an individual is considering employment or association with an attest client, the covered member should notify an appropriate person in the firm.

   d. The appropriate person in the firm should consider whether, based on the nature of the engagement and the individual involved, the firm should perform additional procedures to provide reasonable assurance that any work that the individual performed for the attest client was performed in compliance with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001].

03 If the individual accepts an offer of employment or otherwise becomes associated with the attest client in a key position, see the “Subsequent Employment or Association With an Attest Client” interpretation [1.279.020] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] for additional requirements. [Prior reference: paragraph .04 of ET section 101]

1.279.020 Subsequent Employment or Association With an Attest Client

01 This interpretation applies to partners and professional employees who leave their firms and are subsequently employed by, or associated with, one of the firm’s attest clients in a key position.

02 The familiarity, self-interest, undue influence, or management participation threats to the member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and independence would be impaired unless all of the safeguards in items a–e of the following list are met:

   **Individual Safeguards**

   a. Amounts due to the former partner or professional employee for his or her previous interest in the firm and unfunded, vested retirement benefits cannot be material to the firm, and the underlying formula used to calculate the payments remain fixed during the payout period. The firm may adjust the retirement benefits for inflation and pay interest on amounts due.

   b. The former partner or professional employee is not in a position to influence the firm’s operations or financial policies.

   c. The former partner or professional employee does not participate or appear to participate in the firm’s business and is not otherwise associated with the firm, regardless of whether he or she is compensated for such participation or association, once employment or association with the attest client begins. For example, the individual would appear to participate in, or be associated with, the firm if:

      i. the individual provides consultation to the firm;

      ii. the firm provides the individual with an office and related amenities, such as administrative and technology services;
iii. the individual’s name is included in the firm’s office directory; or

iv. the individual is identified as a member of the firm in membership lists of business, professional, or civic organizations, unless the member is clearly designated as retired.

Ongoing Attest Engagement Team Safeguards

d. The ongoing attest engagement team should consider whether to modify the engagement procedures to adjust for the risk that the former partner’s or professional employee’s prior knowledge of the audit plan could reduce audit effectiveness. In addition, if the individual will have significant interaction with the attest engagement team, an appropriate individual in the firm should evaluate whether the existing attest engagement team members have sufficient experience and stature to deal effectively with the individual in conducting the engagement.

e. If the former partner or professional employee joins the attest client in a key position within one year of disassociating from the firm and has significant interaction with the attest engagement team, an appropriate professional in the firm should review the subsequent attest engagement to determine whether the engagement team members maintained the appropriate level of skepticism when evaluating the individual’s representations and work. The professional applying this safeguard should have appropriate stature, expertise, and objectivity. In performing this review, the professional should consider relevant factors, such as the following:

i. The position that the individual assumed at the attest client.

ii. The position that the individual held at the firm.

iii. The nature of the services that the individual provided to the attest client. The professional should take appropriate actions, as deemed necessary, based on the results of this review.

.03 The procedures performed in applying items d–e of paragraph .02 of this interpretation will depend on several factors, including the following:

a. Whether the individual served on the engagement team

b. The positions that the individual held at the firm and has accepted at the attest client

c. The length of time that has elapsed since the individual left the firm

d. The circumstances of the individual’s departure

.04 An inadvertent and isolated failure to apply items d–e in paragraph .02 of this interpretation would not impair independence provided that the relevant parties perform the required procedures promptly upon discovery of the failure to do so and all other provisions of this interpretation are met. [Prior reference: paragraph .04 of ET section 101]

1.280 Memberships

1.280.010 Member of a Social Club

.01 If a covered member belongs to a social club (for example, a country club, tennis club) that is an attest client and is required to acquire a pro rata share of the club’s equity or debt securities, then management participation, self-review, and self-interest threats to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist. Threats would be at an acceptable level if the club membership is essentially a social matter, because such equity or debt ownership would not be considered to be a direct financial interest. Accordingly, independence would not be impaired.

.02 Threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards if a partner or
professional employee is simultaneously employed or associated with the *attest client's* social club as described in the “**Simultaneous Employment or Association With an Attest Client**” interpretation [1.275.005] of the “Independence Rule.” Accordingly, *independence* would be *impaired*. [Prior reference: paragraphs .033–.034 of ET section 191]

### 1.280.020 Member of a Trade Association

.01 If a *covered member* belongs to a trade association that is an *attest client*, management participation or self-review *threats* to the *covered member's* compliance with the “**Independence Rule**” [1.200.001] may exist.

.02 *Threats* to compliance with the “**Independence Rule**” [1.200.001] would not be at an *acceptable level* and could not be reduced to an *acceptable level* by the application of *safeguards* if a *partner* or professional employee is simultaneously employed or associated with the trade association as described in the “**Simultaneous Employment or Association With an Attest Client**” interpretation [1.275.005] of the “Independence Rule.” Accordingly, *independence* would be *impaired*. [Prior reference: paragraphs .003–.004 of ET section 191]

### 1.280.030 Member of Common Interest Realty Association

.01 If a *covered member* belongs to a common interest realty association (CIRA) because the *covered member* owns or leases real estate, then management participation, self-interest, self-review, or advocacy *threats* to the *covered member's* compliance with the “**Independence Rule**” [1.200.001] may exist. Examples of CIRAs include cooperatives, condominium associations, planned unit developments, homeowners associations, and timeshare developments.

.02 *Threats* would be at an *acceptable level* and *independence* would not be *impaired* if all of the following *safeguards* are met:

- a. The CIRA performs functions similar to local governments, such as public safety, road maintenance, and utilities.

- b. The *covered member’s* annual assessment is not material to either the *covered member* or the CIRA’s operating budgeted assessments.

- c. The liquidation of the CIRA or the sale of common assets would not result in a distribution to the *covered member*.

- d. The CIRA’s creditors would not have recourse to the *covered member’s* assets if the CIRA became insolvent.

.03 *Threats* to compliance with the “**Independence Rule**” [1.200.001] would not be at an *acceptable level* and cannot be reduced to an *acceptable level* by the application of *safeguards* if a *partner* or professional employee is simultaneously employed or associated with the CIRA as described in the “**Simultaneous Employment or Association With an Attest Client**” interpretation [1.275.005] of the “Independence Rule.” Accordingly, *independence* would be *impaired*.

.04 A *member* who has a personal or professional relationship with a real estate developer or management company that is associated with the CIRA should consider the “**Conflicts of Interest**” interpretation [1.110.010] under the “**Integrity and Objectivity Rule**” [1.100.001]. [Prior reference: paragraphs .061–.062 of ET section 191]

### 1.280.040 Member of a Credit Union

.01 When a *covered member* is a member of a credit union that is an *attest client*, the self-interest *threat* would be at an *acceptable level*, and *independence* would not be *impaired*, if the *covered member* individually qualifies to join the credit union other than by virtue of the *professional services* provided to the credit union. However, if during the *period of the professional engagement* the *member's* qualification to join

97
the credit union is a result of the professional services provided to the credit union, threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards. Accordingly, independence would be impaired.

.02 Covered members may be subject to additional restrictions, as described in the “Depository Accounts” interpretation [1.255.010] and the “Loans and Leases With Lending Institutions” interpretation [1.260.020] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001]. In addition, partners and professional employees may be subject to additional restrictions, as described in paragraph .03 of the “Overview of Financial Interests” interpretation [1.240.010] of the “Independence Rule.” [Prior reference: paragraphs .150–.151 of ET section 191]

[See Revision History Table.]

1.285 Gifts and Entertainment

1.285.010 Offering or Accepting Gifts or Entertainment

.01 For purposes of this interpretation, the attest client also includes an individual in a key position with the attest client or an individual with a beneficial ownership interest (known through reasonable inquiry) that gives the individual significant influence over the attest client.

.02 Accepting a gift from an attest client during the period of the professional engagement may create undue influence or self-interest threats to a member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001]. If a member’s firm, a member of the attest engagement team, or an individual in a position to influence the attest engagement accepts a gift from an attest client and the value is not clearly insignificant to the recipient, the threat to the member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards. Accordingly, independence would be impaired.

.03 Accepting entertainment from an attest client during the period of the professional engagement may create undue influence or self-interest threats to a member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001]. If a covered member accepts entertainment from an attest client that is not reasonable in the circumstances, the threats to the member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards. Accordingly, independence would be impaired.

.04 Offering gifts or entertainment to an attest client during the period of the professional engagement may create a familiarity threat to a member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001]. If a covered member offers a gift or entertainment to an attest client that is not reasonable in the circumstances, the threat to the member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards. Accordingly, independence would be impaired.

.05 The member should exercise judgment in determining whether gifts or entertainment would be considered reasonable in the circumstances. Examples of relevant facts and circumstances include the following:

a. The nature of the gift or entertainment

b. The occasion giving rise to the gift or entertainment

c. The cost or value of the gift or entertainment

d. The nature, frequency, and value of other gifts and entertainment offered or accepted

e. Whether the entertainment was associated with the active conduct of business directly before, during, or after the entertainment
f. Whether other attest clients also participated in the entertainment

g. The individuals from the attest client’s and member’s firm who participated in the entertainment

Refer to the “Offering or Accepting Gifts or Entertainment” interpretation [1.120.010] of the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] for additional guidance. [Prior reference: paragraphs .228–.229 of ET section 191]

[See Revision History Table.]

A nonauthoritative basis-for-conclusions document summarizing considerations that were deemed significant in the development of this interpretation is available at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadabledocuments/gifts_basis_document.pdf.

A nonauthoritative question and answer regarding campaign contributions made to the campaign of an individual that is associated with an attest client in a key position or holds a financial interest in an attest client that is material or enables the individual to exercise significant influence over the attest client is available at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadabledocuments/ethics-general-faqs.pdf.

1.290 Actual or Threatened Litigation

1.290.010 Actual or Threatened Litigation

The relationship between an attest client’s management and a covered member must be characterized by complete candor and full disclosure regarding all aspects of the attest client’s business operations. In addition, the covered member must not be biased so that the covered member can exercise professional judgment and objectivity in evaluating management’s financial reporting decisions.

Litigation or the expressed intention to commence litigation between a covered member and an attest client or its management and, in some cases, other parties during the period of the professional engagement may create self-interest or adverse interest threats to the member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001]. Accordingly, covered members should evaluate all such circumstances in accordance with this interpretation.

Litigation or the expressed intention to commence litigation between a covered member and an attest client or its management and, in some cases, other parties requires the covered member to assess the materiality of the litigation to the covered member, the covered member’s firm, and the attest client. The covered member’s assessment should include an evaluation of the nature of the matter(s) underlying the litigation and all other relevant factors.

Litigation Between the Attest Client and Member

When an attest client’s present management commences, or expresses an intention to commence, legal action against a covered member, the covered member and the attest client’s management may be placed in adversarial positions in which self-interest may affect the covered member’s objectivity and management’s willingness to make complete disclosures.

Accordingly, independence may be impaired whenever the covered member and the covered member’s attest client or its management are in threatened or actual positions of material adverse interests due to threatened or actual litigation.

Situations involving threatened or actual litigation are complex and diverse, making it difficult to identify precise points at which threats to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would be at an acceptable level. There are situations regarding litigation between
covered members and attest clients in which threats to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by safeguards and independence would be impaired. Examples of these situations are:

a. An attest client’s present management commences litigation alleging deficiencies in audit work performed for the attest client or expresses its intention to commence such litigation, and the covered member concludes that it is probable that such a claim will be filed.

b. A covered member commences litigation against an attest client’s present management alleging management fraud or deceit.

.07 If threatened or actual litigation is unrelated to the performance of an attest engagement and is for an amount that is not material to the covered member’s firm or the attest client, threats to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would be at an acceptable level, and independence would not be impaired. Such claims may arise, for example, out of immaterial disputes regarding billings for services, results of tax or management services advice, or similar matters.

Litigation by Security Holders

.08 A covered member may also become involved in litigation (primary litigation) in which the covered member and the attest client or its management are defendants. For example, one or more stockholders may bring a stockholders’ derivative action or class-action lawsuit against the attest client or its management, the attest client’s officers, directors, or underwriters, and covered members.

.09 Such primary litigation by itself would not threaten the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001]. However, if other circumstances exist that may create threats, the covered member should apply the “Conceptual Framework for Independence” interpretation [1.210.010] to evaluate whether the threats are at an acceptable level. For example, threats will exist if cross-claims are filed against the covered member alleging that the covered member is responsible for any deficiencies in work performed for the attest client or if the covered member, as a defense, alleges that the attest client’s management engaged in fraud or deceit.

.10 The following are examples of situations in which threats to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by safeguards, thereby impairing independence:

a. The attest client or its management or directors have filed cross-claims to protect a right to legal redress in the event of a future adverse decision in the primary litigation (or, in lieu of cross-claims, agreements to extend the statute of limitations), and there is a significant risk that the cross-claim will result in a settlement or judgment in an amount that is material to the covered member’s firm or the attest client.

b. The attest client’s underwriter and the attest client or its present management assert cross-claims against the covered member.

.11 If only the underwriter or officers or directors of the covered member’s other attest clients file cross-claims against the covered member, threats to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would be at an acceptable level unless other circumstances create threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule.”

Other Third-Party Litigation

.12 A lending institution or other creditor, security holder, or insurance company that alleges reliance on the attest client’s financial statements as a basis for having extended credit or insurance coverage to an attest client may commence third-party litigation against the covered member to recover their loss. An example is an insurance company commencing litigation either as a result of receiving an assignment of a claim or
under subrogation rights against the covered member in the attest client’s name to recover losses that the insurer reimbursed to the attest client. If the attest client is only the nominal plaintiff, threats to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would be at an acceptable level unless other circumstances exist, such as when the covered member alleges, as a defense, that present management engaged in fraud or deceit. The attest client is a nominal plaintiff when the insurance company or lender sues in the name of the attest client as a result of obtaining subrogation rights or an assignment from the attest client and the attest client does not have a beneficial interest in the claim.

.13 If the real party in interest in the litigation (for example, the insurance company) is also the covered member’s attest client (the plaintiff client), threats to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist if the litigation carries a significant risk of a settlement or judgment in an amount that would be material to the covered member’s firm or the plaintiff client.

Termination of Impairment

.14 Threats to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would be eliminated or reduced to an acceptable level when the parties reach a final resolution of the matter(s) at issue and the matter(s) no longer affects the relationship between the covered member and the attest client, as described in paragraph .01 of this interpretation. The covered member should determine whether the conditions of such resolution have effectively eliminated such threats or reduced them to an acceptable level. [Prior reference: paragraph .08 of ET section 101]

1.295 Nonattest Services

1.295.010 Scope and Applicability of Nonattest Services

.01 When a member performs nonattest services for an attest client, self-review, management participation, or advocacy threats to the member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist. When significant independence threats exist during the period of the professional engagement or the period covered by the financial statements (except as provided for in paragraph .03), independence will be impaired unless the threats are reduced to an acceptable level and any requirements included in the interpretations of the “Nonattest Services” subtopic [1.295] under the “Independence Rule” have been met.

.02 For purposes of the interpretations of the “Nonattest Services” subtopic [1.295] under the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001], the term member includes the member’s firm.

.03 Period of engagement. A member’s independence would not be impaired if the member performed nonattest services that would have otherwise impaired independence during the period covered by the financial statements if all of the following conditions exist:

a. The nonattest services were provided prior to period of the professional engagement.

b. The nonattest services related to periods prior to the period covered by the financial statements.

c. The financial statements for the period to which the nonattest services relate were audited by another firm (or in the case of a review engagement, reviewed or audited by another firm).

Nonauthoritative questions and answers regarding the period of the professional engagement are available at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadabledocuments/nonattestservicesfaqs.pdf.

.04 Activities related to attest services. Performing attest services often involves communications between the member and client management regarding
a. the client’s selection and application of accounting standards or policies and financial statement disclosure requirements;

b. the appropriateness of the client’s methods used in determining accounting and financial reporting;

c. adjusting journal entries that the member has prepared or proposed for client management consideration; and

d. the form or content of the financial statements.

These communications are considered a normal part of the attest engagement and are not considered nonattest services subject to the “General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services” [1.295.040] and “Documentation Requirements When Providing Nonattest Services” [1.295.050] interpretations.

.05 However, the member should exercise judgment in determining whether his or her involvement has become so extensive that it would constitute performing a separate service which would be subject to the “General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services” interpretation [1.295.040].

.06 For example, activities such as financial statement preparation, cash-to-accrual conversions, and reconciliations are considered outside the scope of the attest engagement and, therefore, constitute a nonattest service. Such activities would not impair independence if the requirements of the interpretations of the “Nonattest Services” subtopic [1.295] are met.


.07 Engagements subject to independence rules of certain regulatory or standard-setting bodies. Threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level through the application of safeguards if a member is not in compliance with the independence regulations of authoritative regulatory bodies that are more restrictive than the interpretations of the “Nonattest Services” subtopic [1.295] under the “Independence Rule” (examples of such authoritative bodies are the SEC, the Government Accountability Office [GAO], the Department of Labor [DOL], the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board [PCAOB], and state boards of accountancy) when a member performs nonattest services for an attest client and is required to be independent of the attest client under the regulations of the applicable regulatory body. Independence would be impaired under these circumstances. [Prior reference: paragraph .05 of ET section 101]

.08 Refer to the “Staff Augmentation Arrangements” interpretation [1.275.007] when the engagement involves lending firm personnel (augmented staff) to an attest client whereby the attest client is responsible for the direction and supervision of the activities performed by the augmented staff.

Effective Date

.09 Paragraph .06 of this interpretation is effective for engagements covering periods beginning on or after December 15, 2014.

[See Revision History Table.]
Before agreeing to perform nonattest services, the member should evaluate whether the performance of multiple nonattest services by the member or member’s firm in the aggregate creates a significant threat to the member’s independence that cannot be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of the safeguards in the “General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services” interpretation [1.295.040].

In situations in which a member determines that threats are not at an acceptable level, safeguards in addition to those in the “General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services” interpretation [1.295.040] should be applied to eliminate the threats or reduce them to an acceptable level. If no safeguards exist that will eliminate or reduce the threats to an acceptable level, independence would be impaired.

For purposes of this interpretation, the member is not required to consider the possible threats to independence created due to the provision of nonattest services by other network firms within the firm’s network. [Prior reference: paragraph .05 of ET section 101]

Effective Date

This interpretation is effective for engagements covering periods beginning on or after December 15, 2014.

1.295.030 Management Responsibilities

If a member were to assume a management responsibility for an attest client, the management participation threat would be so significant that no safeguards could reduce the threat to an acceptable level and independence would be impaired. It is not possible to specify every activity that is a management responsibility. However, management responsibilities involve leading and directing an entity, including making significant decisions regarding the acquisition, deployment, and control of human, financial, physical, and intangible resources.

Whether an activity is a management responsibility depends on the circumstances and requires the exercise of judgment. Examples of activities that would be considered management responsibilities and, as such, impair independence if performed for an attest client, include

- setting policy or strategic direction for the attest client.
- directing or accepting responsibility for actions of the attest client’s employees except to the extent permitted when using internal auditors to provide assistance for services performed under auditing or attestation standards.
- authorizing, executing, or consummating transactions or otherwise exercising authority on behalf of an attest client or having the authority to do so.
- preparing source documents, in electronic or other form, that evidence the occurrence of a transaction.
- having custody of an attest client’s assets.
- deciding which recommendations of the member or other third parties to implement or prioritize.
- reporting to those charged with governance on behalf of management.
- serving as an attest client’s stock transfer or escrow agent, registrar, general counsel or equivalent.
- accepting responsibility for the management of an attest client’s project.
- accepting responsibility for the preparation and fair presentation of the attest client’s financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.
Part 1 — Members in Public Practice

k. accepting responsibility for designing, implementing, or maintaining internal control.

l. performing ongoing evaluations of the attest client’s internal control as part of its monitoring activities.

[Prior reference: paragraph .05 of ET section 101]

Nonauthoritative questions and answers regarding management responsibilities and controllership services are available at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadabledocuments/nonattestservicesfaqs.pdf.

1.295.040 General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services

.01 When a member performs a nonattest service for an attest client, threats to the member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist. Unless an interpretation of the “Nonattest Services” subtopic [1.295] under the “Independence Rule” states otherwise, threats would be at an acceptable level, and independence would not be impaired, when all the following safeguards are met:

a. The member determines that the attest client and its management agree to

   i. assume all management responsibilities as described in the “Management Responsibilities” interpretation [1.295.030].

   ii. oversee the service, by designating an individual, preferably within senior management, who possesses suitable skill, knowledge, and/or experience. The member should assess and be satisfied that such individual understands the services to be performed sufficiently to oversee them. However, the individual is not required to possess the expertise to perform or re-perform the services.

   iii. evaluate the adequacy and results of the services performed.

   iv. accept responsibility for the results of the services.

b. The member does not assume management responsibilities (See the “Management Responsibilities” interpretation [1.295.030] of the “Independence Rule”) when providing nonattest services and the member is satisfied that the attest client and its management will

   i. be able to meet all of the criteria delineated in item a;

   ii. make an informed judgment on the results of the member’s nonattest services; and

   iii. accept responsibility for making the significant judgments and decisions that are the proper responsibility of management.

If the attest client is unable or unwilling to assume these responsibilities (for example, the attest client cannot oversee the nonattest services provided or is unwilling to carry out such responsibilities due to lack of time or desire), the member’s performance of nonattest services would impair independence.

   c. Before performing nonattest services the member establishes and documents in writing his or her understanding with the attest client (board of directors, audit committee, or management, as appropriate in the circumstances) regarding

   i. objectives of the engagement,

   ii. services to be performed,
iii. *attest client'*s acceptance of its responsibilities,

iv. member’s responsibilities, and

v. any limitations of the engagement.

.02  The safeguards in paragraph .01 and the “Documentation Requirements When Providing Nonattest Services” interpretation [1.295.050] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] do not apply to certain routine activities performed by the member, such as providing advice and responding to the *attest client'*s questions as part of the *attest client*-member relationship. However, in providing such services, the member must not assume management responsibilities, as described in the “Management Responsibilities” interpretation [1.295.030] of the “Independence Rule.” [Prior reference: paragraph .05 of ET section 101]

Nonauthoritative questions and answers regarding suitable skill, knowledge, and experience are available at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadabledocuments/nonattestservicesfaqs.pdf.

[See Revision History Table.]

1.295.050 Documentation Requirements When Providing Nonattest Services

.01  Before performing nonattest services, the member should document in writing the member’s understanding established with the *attest client*, as described in paragraph .01c of the “General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services” interpretation [1.295.040] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001].

.02  Failure to prepare the required documentation does not impair independence provided that the member did establish the understanding with the *attest client*. However, failure to prepare the required documentation would be considered a violation of the “Compliance With Standards Rule” [1.310.001].

.03  The documentation requirement does not apply to nonattest services performed prior to the period of the professional engagement for an *attest client*. However, for nonattest services provided during the period covered by the financial statements, the member should document in writing that the requirements of the “General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services” interpretation [1.295.040] were met prior to the period of the professional engagement, including the requirement to establish an understanding with the *attest client*. [Prior reference: paragraph .05 of ET section 101]

Sample language for how to document your understanding with the *attest client* is available at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadabledocuments/nonattestservicesfaqs.pdf.

1.295.105 Advisory Services

.01  Self-review or management participation threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist when a member performs advisory services for an *attest client*.

.02  If the member’s services are only advisory in nature and the member applies the “General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services” interpretation [1.295.040] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001], threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired. For example, a member may

a. provide advice, research materials, and recommendations to assist management in performing its functions and making decisions.

b. attend board meetings as a nonvoting advisor.

c. interpret financial statements, forecasts, or other analyses.
Part 1 — Members in Public Practice

\[d\]. provide management with advice regarding its potential plans, strategies, or relationships.

\[.03\] However, \textit{threats} to compliance with the "Independence Rule" [1.200.001] would not be at an \textit{acceptable level} and could not be reduced to an \textit{acceptable level} by the application of \textit{safeguards} if a member assumes any management responsibilities, as described in the "Management Responsibilities" interpretation [1.295.030]. Accordingly, independence is \textit{impaired}. [Prior reference: paragraph .05 of ET section 101 and paragraphs .015-.016 of ET section 191]

1.295.110 Appraisal, Valuation, and Actuarial Services

\[.01\] Self-review or management participation \textit{threats} to compliance with the "Independence Rule" [1.200.001] may exist when a member performs appraisal, valuation, or actuarial service for an \textit{attest client}.

\[.02\] \textit{Threats} to compliance with the "Independence Rule" [1.200.001] would not be at an \textit{acceptable level} and could not be reduced to an \textit{acceptable level} by the application of \textit{safeguards} if the member performs an appraisal, a valuation, or an actuarial service for an \textit{attest client} when \textit{(a)} the services involve a significant degree of subjectivity and \textit{(b)} the results of the service, individually or when combined with other valuation, appraisal, or actuarial services, are material to the \textit{attest client's financial statements}. Accordingly, independence would be \textit{impaired} under these circumstances.

\[.03\] When performing appraisal, valuation, and actuarial services for an \textit{attest client} that are permitted under this interpretation, all requirements of the "General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services" interpretation [1.295.040] of the "Independence Rule" [1.200.001] should be met, including that all significant assumptions and matters of judgment are determined or approved by the \textit{attest client}, and the \textit{attest client} is in a position to have an informed judgment on, and accepts responsibility for, the results of the service.

\textit{Valuations Involving a Significant Degree of Subjectivity}

\[.04\] Examples of valuations that generally involve a significant degree of subjectivity include, ESOPs, business combinations, or appraisals of assets or liabilities. Accordingly, if these services produce results that are material to the \textit{attest client's financial statements}, independence would be \textit{impaired}.

\textit{Actuarial Valuations of Pension or Postemployment Benefit Liabilities}

\[.05\] An actuarial valuation of an \textit{attest client's} pension or postemployment benefit liabilities generally does not involve a significant degree of subjectivity because reasonably consistent results are produced when the same assumptions and information are used in performing the valuation. Therefore, \textit{threats} would be at an \textit{acceptable level} and independence would not be \textit{impaired}.

\textit{Appraisal, Valuations, and Actuarial Services for Nonfinancial Statement Purposes}

\[.06\] \textit{Threats} would be at an \textit{acceptable level} if a member provided appraisal, valuation, or actuarial services solely for nonfinancial statement purposes. Some examples are appraisal, valuation, and actuarial services performed for tax planning or tax compliance, estate and gift taxation, and divorce proceedings. Accordingly, independence would not be \textit{impaired}. [Prior reference: paragraph .05 of ET section 101]


1.295.113 Assisting Attest Clients With Implementing Accounting Standards

\[.01\] When a \textit{member} assists an \textit{attest client} with planning and executing the implementation of an accounting standard, self-review or management participation \textit{threats} to compliance with the "Independence Rule" [1.200.001] may exist.
.02 If a member applies the “General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services” interpretation [1.295.040] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001], threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired if, for example, a member does the following:

a. Develops and provides training to attest client personnel on the effects of the accounting standard

b. Researches, provides advice, makes recommendations, and assists management in identifying financial statement account balances, contracts, and transactions to be assessed under the accounting standard

c. Provides advice and recommendations related to the application of the accounting standard, including

i. analyzing and advising management on the potential impact of the accounting standard on the entity’s accounting policies, procedures, and internal controls

ii. recommending possible revisions to existing policies, procedures, and internal controls

iii. assisting the attest client with summarizing the attest client’s analysis and policies related to the accounting positions under the accounting standard

iv. preparing transition-related calculations to illustrate the impact of the application of the accounting standard for management’s consideration and selection

d. Provides observations and recommendations on management’s existing overall project plan timeline or assists management in developing an overall project plan timeline to adopt the accounting standard

e. Assists management in drafting implementation strategies or methods used to implement the accounting standard

f. Assists the attest client in developing implementation templates or provides the attest client with firm-developed templates or tools, including those related to specific calculations under the accounting standard that meet the exception in paragraph .02g of the “Information Systems Services” interpretation [1.295.145] under the “Independence Rule,” provided the attest client’s management understands the nature of any underlying calculations and the impact the results will have on the financial statements

g. Proposes standard journal entries or adjustments to existing journal entries necessary for adoption of the accounting standard, subject to attest client approval in accordance with paragraph .02e of the “Bookkeeping, Payroll, and Other Disbursements” interpretation [1.295.120]

h. Provides recommendations related to existing or new information systems as a result of the accounting standard

.03 However, threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards, and independence would be impaired if, for example, a member does any of the following:

a. Leads or supervises any attest client implementation team

b. Makes decisions on which recommendations to prioritize or how to implement the accounting standard

c. Sets any policy or procedures related to the accounting standard

d. Accepts responsibility for designing new or redesigning existing internal controls over financial reporting


Part 1 — Members in Public Practice

e. Designs or develops new or redesigns existing financial information systems as described in the “Information System Services” interpretation [1.295.145] under the “Independence Rule”

Effective Date

.04 This interpretation is effective December 31, 2022. Early implementation is allowed.

[See Revision History Table.]

Nonauthoritative questions and answers regarding suitable skill, knowledge, and experience are available at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadeddocuments/nonattestservicesfaqs.pdf.


1.295.115 Benefit Plan Administration

.01 When a member provides benefit plan administration services to an attest client, self-review and management participation threats to the member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist.

.02 Notwithstanding the conclusions reached in paragraph .03 of this interpretation, a member should comply with the more restrictive independence provisions of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act (ERISA) of 1974 and DOL regulations when performing audits of employee benefit plans subject to those regulations.

.03 If the member applies the “General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services” interpretation [1.295.040] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001], threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired. For example, the member may

   a. communicate summary plan data to a plan trustee.

   b. advise management regarding the application and impact of provisions in a plan document.

   c. process certain transactions that have been initiated by plan participations or approved by the plan administrators using the member’s electronic media, such as an interactive voice response system or Internet connection or other media. Such transactions may include processing investment or benefit elections, changes in contributions to the plan, data entry, participant confirmations, and distributions and loans.

   d. prepare account valuations for plan participants using data collected through the member’s electronic or other media.

   e. prepare and transmit participant statements to plan participants based on data collected through the member’s electronic or other media.

.04 However, threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level, and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards, and independence would be impaired if, for example, a member

   a. makes policy decisions on behalf of management.

   b. interprets the provisions in a plan document for a plan participant on behalf of management without first obtaining management’s concurrence.
c. makes disbursements on behalf of the plan.

d. has custody of the plan’s assets.

e. serves in a fiduciary capacity, as defined by ERISA. [Prior reference: paragraph .05 of ET section 101]

1.295.120 Bookkeeping, Payroll, and Other Disbursements

.01 When a member provides bookkeeping, payroll, and other disbursement services to an attest client, self-review and management participation threats to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist.

.02 If the member applies the “General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services” interpretation [1.295.040] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001], threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired. For example, a member may

a. record transactions to an attest client’s general ledger when management has determined or approved the account classifications for the transaction.

b. post transactions coded by the attest client to the attest client’s general ledger.

c. prepare financial statements based on information in the attest client’s trial balance.

d. post client-approved journal or other entries to an attest client’s trial balance.

e. propose standard, adjusting, or correcting journal entries or other changes affecting the financial statements to the attest client. Prior to the member posting these journal entries or changes, the member should be satisfied that management has reviewed the entries and understands the nature of the proposed entries and the effect the entries will have on the attest client’s financial statements.

f. generate unsigned checks using source documents or other records provided and approved by the attest client.

g. process an attest client’s payroll using payroll time records that the attest client has provided and approved.

h. transmit client-approved payroll or other disbursement information to a bank or similar entity subsequent to the attest client’s review and authorization for the member to make the transmission. Prior to such transmission, the attest client is responsible for making the arrangements with the bank or similar entity to limit the corresponding individual payments regarding the amount and payee. In addition, once transmitted, the attest client must authorize the bank or similar entity to process the payroll information.

i. prepare a reconciliation (for example, bank and accounts receivable) that identifies reconciling items for the client’s evaluation.

.03 However, threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards, and independence would be impaired, if, for example, a member

a. determines or changes journal entries, any account coding or classification of transactions, or any other accounting records without first obtaining the attest client’s approval.

b. authorizes or approves transactions.

c. prepares source documents.
d. makes changes to source documents without the attest client’s approval.

e. accepts responsibility to authorize payment of attest client funds, electronically or otherwise, except for electronic payroll tax payments when the member complies with the requirements of the “Tax Services” interpretation [1.295.160] of the “Independence Rule.”

f. accepts responsibility to sign or cosign an attest client’s checks, even if only in emergency situations.

g. maintains an attest client’s bank account or otherwise has custody of an attest client’s funds or makes credit or banking decisions for the attest client.

h. approves vendor invoices for payment. [Prior reference: paragraph .05 of ET section 101]

Nonauthoritative questions and answers about bookkeeping services are available at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadedocuments/nonattestservicesfaqs.pdf.

[See Revision History Table.]

1.295.125 Business Risk Consulting

.01 When a member provides business risk consulting services to an attest client, self-review and management participation threats to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist.

.02 If the member applies the “General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services” interpretation [1.295.040] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001], threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired. For example, a member may

a. assist management in its assessment of the attest client’s business risk control processes.

b. recommend improvements to an attest client’s business risk control processes and assists in the implementation of these improvements.

.03 However, threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards, and independence would be impaired, if, for example, a member

a. makes or approves business risk decisions.

b. presents business risk considerations to the board or others on behalf of management. [Prior reference: paragraph .05 of ET section 101]

1.295.130 Corporate Finance Consulting

.01 When a member provides corporate finance consulting services to an attest client, self-review, management participation, and advocacy threats to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist.

.02 If the member applies the “General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services” interpretation [1.295.040] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001], threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired. For example, a member may

a. assist management in developing its corporate strategies.

b. assist management in identifying possible sources of capital that meet the attest client’s specifications or criteria.
c. introduce management to possible sources of capital that meet the attest client’s specifications or criteria.

d. assist management in analyzing the effects of proposed transactions with potential buyers, sellers, or capital sources.

e. advise an attest client during its negotiations with potential buyers, sellers, or capital sources.

f. assist the attest client in drafting its offering document or memorandum.

g. participate with management in its transaction negotiations in an advisory capacity.

h. be named as a financial adviser in an attest client’s private placement memoranda or offering documents.

.03 However, threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards, and independence would be impaired, if, for example, a member

a. commits the attest client to the terms of a transaction.

b. consummates a transaction on behalf of the attest client.

c. acts as a promoter, an underwriter, a broker-dealer, or a guarantor of an attest client’s securities or as a distributor of private placement memoranda or offering documents.

d. maintains custody of an attest client’s securities. [Prior reference: paragraph .05 of ET section 101]

1.295.135 Executive or Employee Recruiting

.01 When a member provides executive or employee recruiting services to an attest client, self-review and management participation threats to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist.

.02 If the member applies the “General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services” interpretation [1.295.040] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001], threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired. For example, a member may

a. recommend a position description or candidate specifications.

b. solicit and screen candidates based on criteria approved by the attest client, such as required education, skills, or experience.

c. recommend qualified candidates to the attest client for their consideration based on criteria approved by the attest client.

d. participate in employee hiring or compensation discussions in an advisory capacity.

.03 However, threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards, and independence would be impaired, if, for example, a member

a. commits the attest client to employee compensation or benefit arrangements.

b. hires or terminates the attest client’s employees. [Prior reference: paragraph .05 of ET section 101]
1.295.140 Forensic Accounting

.01 Forensic accounting services. For purposes of this interpretation, forensic accounting services are nonattest services that involve the application of (a) special skills in accounting, auditing, finance, quantitative methods or certain areas of the law, and research and (b) investigative skills to collect, analyze, and evaluate evidential matter and to interpret and communicate findings. Forensic accounting services consist of investigative services and litigation services.

.02 Attest client. For purposes of this interpretation, the term attest client refers to the attest client with respect to which the member is providing litigation services, not the law firm that engages the member on behalf of the law firm’s client. If the law firm that engages the member on behalf of the member’s attest client is also an attest client of the member, the member should consider the applicability of the “Cooperative Arrangements With Attest Clients” interpretation [1.265.010] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001].

.03 Investigative services. For purposes of this interpretation, investigative services include all forensic services that do not involve actual or threatened litigation, such as performing analyses or investigations that may require the same skills used in litigation services. When a member provides investigative services to an attest client, self-review and management participation threats to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist. However, if the member applies the “General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services” interpretation [1.295.040] of the “Independence Rule,” threats will be at an acceptable level and independence will not be impaired.

.04 Litigation services. For purposes of this interpretation, litigation services recognize the role of the member as an expert or a consultant and consist of providing assistance for actual or potential legal or regulatory proceedings before a trier of fact in connection with the resolution of disputes between parties. Litigation services consist of expert witness services, litigation consulting services, or other litigation services:

a. Expert witness services. For purposes of this interpretation, expert witness services are those litigation services in which a member is engaged to render an opinion before a trier of fact about the matter(s) in dispute based on the member’s expertise, rather than his or her direct knowledge of the disputed facts or events:

i. Expert witness services create the appearance that a member is advocating or promoting an attest client’s position. Therefore, the advocacy threat would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards. Accordingly, if a member is engaged conditionally or unconditionally to provide expert witness services or expert testimony for an attest client, independence would be impaired, except as discussed in the following item ii.

ii. Threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would be at an acceptable level, and independence would not be impaired, if a member provides expert witness services for a large group of plaintiffs or defendants that includes one or more attest clients of the firm, provided that at the outset of the engagement

1. the member’s attest clients constitute less than 20 percent of the members of the group, voting interests of the group, and the claim;

2. no attest client within the group is designated as the lead plaintiff or defendant of the group; and

3. no attest client has the sole decision-making power to select or approve the selection of the expert witness.

iii. Fact witness testimony. Acting as a fact witness (also referred to as a “percipient witness” or “sensory witness”) would not be considered a nonattest service. Fact witness testimony is based on the member’s direct knowledge of the matters, facts, or events in dispute obtained
through the member’s performance of prior professional services for the attest client. As a fact witness, the member’s role is to provide factual testimony to the trier of fact. While testifying as a fact witness, the trier of fact or counsel may question a member about the member’s opinions pertaining to matters within the member’s area of expertise. Answering such questions would not impair the member’s independence.

iv. In determining whether the member’s services are considered expert witness services or fact witness testimony, members should refer to Rules 701–703 of Article VII, “Opinions and Expert Testimony,” of the Federal Rules of Evidence and also refer to other applicable laws, regulations, and rules.

v. When providing expert witness services or fact witness testimony, members are required to comply with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001].

b. Litigation consulting services. For purposes of this interpretation, litigation consulting services are those litigation services in which a member provides advice about the facts, issues, or strategy pertaining to a matter. The consultant does not testify as an expert witness before a trier of fact:

i. When a member provides litigation consulting services, advocacy and management participation threats to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” may exist. If the member applies the “General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services” interpretation [1.295.040] of the “Independence Rule,” threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired. For purposes of complying with paragraph .01b of the “General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services” interpretation of the “Independence Rule,” the attest client may designate its attorney to oversee the litigation consulting services.

ii. However, if the member providing litigation consulting services subsequently agrees to serve as an expert witness, threats to the member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards. Accordingly, independence would be impaired.

c. Other litigation services. The advocacy threat would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards if a member serves as a trier of fact, a special master, a court-appointed expert, or an arbitrator (including serving on an arbitration panel) in a matter involving an attest client. These services create the appearance that the member is not independent; accordingly, independence would be impaired.

d. However, if the member applies the “General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services” interpretation of the “Independence Rule,” threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired when a member serves as a mediator or any similar role in a matter involving an attest client, provided that the member is not making any decisions on behalf of the parties but, rather, is acting as a facilitator by assisting the parties in reaching their own agreement. When providing such services, the member should consider the requirements of the “Conflicts of Interest” interpretation [1.110.010] of the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule.” [Prior reference: paragraph .05 of ET section 101]


.06 When providing any type of forensic accounting service, members are required to comply with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001].

[See Revision History Table.]
1.295.143 Hosting Services

.01 For purpose of this interpretation, hosting services are nonattest services that involve a member accepting responsibility for the following:

   a. Acting as the sole host of a financial or non-financial information system of an attest client

   b. Taking custody of or storing an attest client’s data or records whereby, that data or records are available only to the attest client from the member, such that the attest client’s data or records are otherwise incomplete

   c. Providing electronic security or back-up services for an attest client’s data or records

.02 When a member provides hosting services, the member is maintaining the attest client’s internal control over its data or records. Accordingly, the management participation threat to the member’s compliance with the "Independence Rule" [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level, and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards, and independence would be impaired.

.03 Examples of activities that are considered hosting services, and as such will impair independence if performed for an attest client, include accepting responsibility for the following:

   a. Housing the attest client’s website or other non-financial information system

   b. Keeping the attest client’s data or records on the attest client’s behalf, for example, the attest client’s general ledger information, supporting schedules (such as, depreciation or amortization schedules), lease agreements or other legal documents are stored on the member’s firm’s servers or servers licensed by the member’s firm or the member is responsible for storing hard copy versions of the data or records

   c. Being the attest client’s business continuity or disaster recovery provider

.04 Examples of activities that are not considered to be hosting services, and as such will not impair independence provided members comply with the requirements of the other interpretations of the "Nonattest Services" subtopic include these:

   a. Retaining a copy of an attest client’s data or records as documentation to support a service the member provided to the attest client. Some examples are as follows:

      i. The payroll data that support a payroll tax return prepared by the member for the attest client

      ii. A bank reconciliation that supports attest procedures performed by the member on the attest client’s cash account

      iii. The attest client’s vendor data used to prepare an analysis of vendor activity

   b. Retaining, for a member’s records, a copy of a work product prepared by the member (for example, a tax return).

   c. Using general ledger software to facilitate the delivery of bookkeeping services when either of the following occurs:

      i. The member and the attest client maintain separate instances of the software on their respective servers, and the member provides updated financial information electronically to the attest client.

      ii. The attest client enters into an agreement with a third-party service provider to maintain its software in a cloud-based solution and grants the member access to the software so that the member can perform the bookkeeping service for the attest client.
Part 1 — Members in Public Practice

d. Retaining data collected by the member related to a work product that the member prepared for an attest client. For example, the member conducts an employee survey and provides the attest client with a report. The member retains the survey data collected to support the work product.

e. Electronically exchanging data, records, or the member’s work product with an attest client or on behalf of an attest client at the attest client’s request. For example, the member uses a portal as follows:

   i. To exchange data and records with the attest client related to professional services provided by the member to the attest client

   ii. To deliver the member’s work product to third parties at the attest client’s request

To avoid providing hosting services, members should terminate the attest client’s access to the data or records in the portal within a reasonable period of time after the conclusion of the engagement.

f. Licensing software to an attest client that the attest client uses to input its data and receive an output that the attest client is responsible for maintaining, provided the software does not perform an activity that, if performed directly by the member, would impair independence.

g. Having possession of a depreciation schedule prepared by the member, provided the depreciation schedule and calculation are given to the attest client so that attest client’s books and records are complete.

h. Retaining an attest client’s original data or records to facilitate the performance of a nonattest service (for example, obtaining original records to prepare the attest client’s tax return), provided that the data or records are returned to the attest client at the end of the engagement or, in a multi-year engagement, at least annually. This does not apply to ongoing hosting services as described in paragraph .01 of this interpretation.

Effective Date

.05 This interpretation is effective July 1, 2019.

[See Revision History Table.]

Nonauthoritative questions and answers regarding hosting services are available at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadabledocuments/nonattestservicesfaqs.pdf.
c. design, develop, install, or integrate an attest client’s information system that is unrelated to the attest client’s financial statements or accounting records.

d. provide training and instruction to an attest client’s employees on an information and control system.

e. perform network maintenance, such as updating virus protection, applying routine updates and patches, or configuring user settings consistent with management’s request.

.03 However, threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards, and independence would be impaired, if, for example, a member

a. designs or develops an attest client’s financial information system.

b. makes other than insignificant modifications to source code underlying an attest client’s existing financial information system.

c. supervises attest client personnel in the daily operation of an attest client’s information system.

d. operates an attest client’s network. [Prior reference: paragraph .05 of ET section 101]

Nonauthoritative questions and answers regarding information systems design, implementation, and integration services are available at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadeddocuments/nonattestservicesfaqs.pdf.

June 2019

The revised interpretation “Information Systems Services,” formerly “Information Systems Design, Implementation, or Integration” (ET sec. 1.295.145) under the “Independence Rule” (ET sec. 1.200.001) is effective January 1, 2023, and early implementation is allowed.

Information Systems Services

Introduction

.01 Self-review and management participation threats to the member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist when a member provides nonattest services related to an attest client’s information systems.

.02 This interpretation applies to all attest engagements, including those in which the subject matter of the engagement is not financial statements. In these cases, the member should define a financial information system as any information system that is subject to the member’s attest procedures considering the relevant factors in paragraph .03a.

Terminology

.03 The following terms are defined solely for the purpose of applying this interpretation:

a. A financial information system (FIS) is a system that aggregates source data underlying the financial statements or generates information that is significant to either the financial statements or financial processes as a whole. An FIS includes a tool that calculates results unless
i. the tool performs only discrete calculations;

ii. the attest client evaluates and accepts responsibility for the input and assumptions; and

iii. the attest client has sufficient information to understand the calculation and the results.

b. Designing an information system means determining how a system or transaction will function, process data, and produce results (for example, reports, journal vouchers, and documents such as sales and purchase orders) to provide a blueprint or schematic for the development of software code (programs) and data structures.

c. Developing an information system entails creating software code, for individual or multiple modules, and testing such code to confirm it is functioning as designed.

d. Commercial off-the-shelf (COTS) refers to software developed, distributed, maintained, and supported by an entity or entities that are not the member or member’s firm (a third-party vendor), sometimes referred to as an “off-the-shelf” package or solution. COTS solutions have generally referred to traditional on-premise software that runs on a customer’s own computers or on a third-party vendor’s “cloud” infrastructure. COTS solutions range from software packages that require only installation on a computer and are ready to run to large-scale, complex enterprise applications.

**Design, Development, or Implementation Services Not Related to an FIS**

.04  
When performing design, development, or implementation services described in this interpretation for an attest client that are not related to an FIS, threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would be at an acceptable level provided all requirements of the “Nonattest Services” subtopic [1.295] of the “Independence Rule” are met, including that the attest client has not outsourced a function, process, or activity to the member, which would result in the member assuming a management responsibility.

**Design or Develop an FIS**

.05  
When a member designs or develops an attest client’s FIS, threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards and independence would be impaired.

.06  
To determine whether a nonattest service is related to an FIS, members should consider all relevant factors, such as whether the nonattest service will affect the following:

a. System controls or system output that will be subject to attest procedures.

b. A system that generates data that are used as input to the financial statements, including data or information that is either reflected in or used in determining amounts and disclosures included in the financial statements.

c. A data-gathering system, such as an analytical or reporting tool, that is used in management’s decision-making about matters that could significantly affect financial reporting.

d. A system that is part of the attest client’s internal controls over financial reporting, including information systems used to effect internal controls over financial reporting (for example, a system used to ensure that information produced for the financial statements is accurate). However,
information systems used only in connection with controlling the efficiency and effectiveness of
operations are considered unrelated to the financial statements and accounting records.

Implement a COTS FIS Software Solution

.07

Implementation services involve activities related to an attest client’s information systems after the design
and development of the system. Implementation ceases when the system is available on a regular basis
to the attest client for its intended use. For example, implementation services can include activities such
as installing, configuring, interfacing, customizing, and data translation. Services that are performed post-
implementation, such as the maintenance, support, and monitoring of the system, are not implementation
services.

.08

Threats created by certain COTS implementation services related to the attest client’s FIS may be reduced
to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards; however, in other situations, threats to compliance
with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would be significant and could not be reduced to an acceptable
level by the application of safeguards. These situations are addressed in paragraphs .09–.20 of this
interpretation.

Install a COTS FIS Software Solution

.09

To install a COTS FIS software solution means the initial loading of software on the client’s designated
hosting site. Software configuration, interfacing, customizing and data translation activities may follow
installation.

.10

When a member installs a COTS FIS software solution, threats to compliance with the “Independence
Rule” [1.200.001] would be at an acceptable level, provided all requirements of the "Nonattest Services"
subtopic [1.295] of the “Independence Rule” are met.

Configure a COTS FIS Software Solution

.11

To configure a COTS FIS software solution means inputting the client-selected features, functionality
options, and settings within the third-party vendor’s software, which determines how the software will
perform certain transactions and process data. Configuration options may also include selecting the
predefined format of certain data attributes and the inclusion or exclusion of such attributes. However, if
the member were to design or develop new software code or features to modify or alter the functionality
of the COTS software solution in ways not predefined by the third-party vendor, this would be considered
designing or developing activities, as described in items (b)–(c) of paragraph .03.

.12

When a member configures a COTS FIS software solution based on client-selected features, functionality
options, and settings within the third-party vendor’s software, threats to compliance with the
“Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would be at an acceptable level provided all requirements of the
"Nonattest Services" subtopic [1.295] of the “Independence Rule” are met.

Customize a COTS FIS Software Solution
To customize a COTS FIS software solution means to modify or enhance the features and functions in ways that go beyond the options provided by the third-party vendor when configuring the COTS software solution.

a. Modification involves altering the COTS software solution code to change or add to the functionality provided by the third-party vendor.

b. Enhancements involve developing new code, external to the COTS software solution, that works in concert with the COTS software solution to provide altered or additional functionality.

If a member customizes an attest client’s COTS FIS software solution, threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards; independence would be impaired.

Interface a COTS FIS Software Solution

Providing interface services for a COTS FIS software solution means connecting two or more systems by designing and developing software code that passes data from one system to another. Interfaces may flow in one direction or be bidirectional. Interfaces may involve the performance of an end-to-end transaction or they may pass data from one system to another.

If a member provides interface services for a COTS FIS software solution, threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards; independence would be impaired except as provided for in paragraph .17.

If a member uses a third-party vendor’s application, such as an application programming interface (API), to interface legacy or COTS FIS software solutions, threats to independence would be at an acceptable level, provided the member will not be designing or developing code for the application to work and all requirements of the “Nonattest Services” subtopic [1.295] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] are met.

Data Translation Services Related to a COTS FIS Software Solution

Performing data translation services for a COTS FIS software solution involves designing and developing the rules or logic necessary to convert legacy system data to a format compatible with that of the new system.

If a member performs data translation services for a COTS FIS software solution, threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards and independence would be impaired except as provided for in paragraph .20.
If a member uses a third-party vendor’s application, such as an API, to perform data translation services for a COTS FIS software solution, threats to independence would be at an acceptable level, provided the member will not be designing or developing code for the application to work and all requirements of the "Nonattest Services" subtopic [1.295] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] are met.

**System and Network Maintenance, Support, and Monitoring**

.21 Maintenance, support, and monitoring services are activities that are provided after a financial or nonfinancial system or network is implemented. If post-implementation services involve the attest client outsourcing an ongoing function, process, or activity to the member that would result in the member assuming a management responsibility, compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards and independence would be impaired. Examples of services that involve an ongoing function, process, or activity that would result in the member assuming a management responsibility include services in which the member directly or indirectly does any of the following:

- a. Operates the attest client’s network, such as managing the attest client’s systems or software applications
- b. Supervises client personnel involved in the operation of the attest client’s information systems
- c. Has responsibility for monitoring or maintaining the attest client’s network performance
- d. Operates or manages the attest client’s information technology help desk
- e. Has responsibility to perform ongoing network maintenance, such as updating virus protection solutions, applying routine updates and patches, or configuring user settings
- f. Has responsibility for maintaining the security of the attest client’s networks and systems

.22 Independence will not be impaired provided all requirements of the "Nonattest Services" subtopic [1.295] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] are met and the maintenance, support, or monitoring services are individually separate, distinct, and not ongoing engagements in which the attest client has outsourced no function, process, or activity to the member that would result in the member assuming a management responsibility. Examples of services that would not impair independence may include any of the following services:

- a. Analyzing a network and providing observations or recommendations
- b. Applying virus protection solutions or updates that the member did not design or develop
- c. Applying certain updates and patches that the member did not design or develop
- d. Providing advice, training, or instruction on a software solution
- e. Assessing the design or operating effectiveness of an attest client’s security over information technology systems
- f. Assessing the attest client’s information technology security policies or practices

A nonauthoritative practice aid is available at https://us.aicpa.org/content/dam/aicpa/interestareas/professionalethics/community/exposuredrafts/downloadabledocuments/2021/isspracticeaid.pdf
1.295.150 Internal Audit

.01 For purposes of this interpretation, internal audit services involve assisting the attest client in the performance of its internal audit activities, sometimes referred to as “internal audit outsourcing.” When a member provides internal audit services to an attest client, self-review and management participation threats to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist.

.02 The attest client’s management is responsible for directing the internal audit function, including the management thereof. Such responsibilities include, but are not limited to, designing, implementing and maintaining internal control. Threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level, cannot be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards, and independence would be impaired if the attest client outsources the internal audit function to the member, whereby the member, in effect, manages the attest client’s internal audit activities.

.03 However, except for the outsourcing services discussed in paragraph .02, threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired if the member assists the attest client in performing financial and operational internal audit activities, provided that, in addition to the “General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services” interpretation [1.295.040] of the “Independence Rule,” the member is satisfied that management

a. designates an individual or individuals who possess suitable skill, knowledge, and experience, preferably within senior management, to be responsible for the internal audit function.

b. determines the scope, risk, and frequency of internal audit activities, including those the member will perform in providing the services.

c. evaluates the findings and results arising from the internal audit activities, including those the member will perform in providing the services.

d. evaluates the adequacy of the audit procedures performed and the findings resulting from the performance of those procedures.

.04 For example, if the member applies the safeguards in paragraph .03, the member may assess whether performance is in compliance with management’s policies and procedures, identify opportunities for improvement, and recommend improvement or further action for management consideration and decision making.

.05 The member may assist the individual responsible for the internal audit function in performing preliminary audit risk assessments, preparing audit plans, and recommending audit priorities. The member should also be satisfied that those charged with governance are informed about the member’s and management’s respective roles and responsibilities in connection with the engagement. Such information should provide those charged with governance a basis for developing guidelines for management and the member to follow in carrying out these responsibilities and monitoring how well the respective responsibilities have been met.

.06 Threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards, and independence would be impaired, if, for example, in addition to those activities listed in the “Management Responsibilities” interpretation [1.295.030] of the “Independence Rule,” a member

a. performs ongoing evaluations (see paragraph .10 that follows) or control activities (for example, reviewing loan originations as part of the attest client’s approval process or reviewing customer
credit information as part of the customer’s sales authorization process) that affect the execution of transactions or ensure that transactions are properly executed or accounted for, or both, and performs routine activities in connection with the attest client’s operating or production processes that are equivalent to those of an ongoing compliance or quality control function.

b. performs separate evaluations on the effectiveness of a significant control such that the member is, in effect, performing routine operations that are built into the attest client’s business process.

c. has attest client management rely on the member’s work as the primary basis for the attest client’s assertions on the design or operating effectiveness of internal controls.

d. determines which, if any, recommendations for improving the internal control system should be implemented.

e. reports to the board of directors or audit committee on behalf of management or the individual responsible for the internal audit function.

f. approves or is responsible for the overall internal audit work plan, including the determination of the internal audit risk and scope, project priorities, and frequency of performance of audit procedures.

g. is connected with the attest client as an employee or in any capacity equivalent to a member of management (for example, being listed as an employee in the attest client’s directories or other attest client publications, permitting himself or herself to be referred to by title or description as supervising or being in charge of the attest client’s internal audit function, or using the attest client’s letterhead or internal correspondence forms in communications).

.07 Monitoring activities. Designing, implementing, or maintaining the attest client’s monitoring activities are management responsibilities. Accordingly, independence would be impaired if a member accepts responsibility for performing such activities. Monitoring activities are procedures performed to assess whether components of internal control are present and functioning. Monitoring can be done through ongoing evaluations, separate evaluations, or some combination of the two. Ongoing evaluations are generally defined, routine operations built in to the attest client’s business processes and performed on a real-time basis. Ongoing evaluations, including managerial activities and everyday supervision of employees, monitor the presence and functioning of the components of internal control in the ordinary course of managing the business. A member who performs such activities for an attest client would be considered to be accepting responsibility for maintaining the attest client’s internal control. Accordingly, the management participation threat created by a member performing ongoing evaluations is so significant that no safeguards could reduce the threat to an acceptable level, and thus independence would be impaired.

.08 Separate evaluations are conducted periodically and generally not ingrained within the business but can be useful in taking a fresh look at whether internal controls are present and functioning. Such evaluations include observations, inquiries, reviews, and other examinations, as appropriate, to ascertain whether controls are designed, implemented, and conducted. The scope and frequency of separate evaluations is a matter of judgment and vary depending on assessment of risks, effectiveness of ongoing evaluations, and other considerations. Because separate evaluations are not built into the attest client’s business process, separate evaluations generally do not create a significant management participation threat to independence.

.09 Members should refer to the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission’s (COSO’s) Internal Control—Integrated Framework, for additional guidance on monitoring activities and distinguishing between ongoing and separate evaluations.

.10 Members should use judgment in determining whether otherwise permitted internal audit services performed may result in a significant management participation threat to independence, considering factors such as the significance of the controls being tested, the scope or extent of the controls being tested in relation to the overall financial statements of the attest client, as well as the frequency of the internal
audit services. If the threat to independence is considered significant, the member should apply safeguards to eliminate or reduce the threat to an acceptable level. If no safeguards could reduce the threat to an acceptable level, then independence would be impaired.

.11 Attest-related services. Services considered extensions of the member’s audit scope applied in the audit of the attest client’s financial statements, such as confirming accounts receivable and analyzing fluctuations in account balances, are not considered internal audit services and would not be subject to this interpretation even if the extent of such testing exceeds that required by generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS). In addition, engagements performed under the attestation standards would not be considered internal audit services and, therefore, would not impair independence.

.12 When a member performs internal audit services that would not impair independence under this interpretation and is subsequently engaged to perform an attestation engagement to report on management’s assertion regarding the effectiveness of its internal control, independence would not be impaired, provided the member is satisfied that attest client management does not rely on the member’s work as the primary basis for its assertion. [Prior reference: paragraph .05 of ET section 101]

[See Revision History Table.]

1.295.155 Investment Advisory or Management

.01 When a member provides investment advisory or management services to an attest client, self-review and management participation threats to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist.

.02 If the member applies the “General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services” interpretation [1.295.040] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001], threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired. For example, a member may

a. recommend the attest client’s allocation of funds among various investments or asset classes based upon the attest client’s desired rate of return, risk tolerance, or other parameters.

b. perform recordkeeping and reporting of the attest client’s portfolio balances, including providing the attest client with a comparative analysis of the attest client’s investments to third-party benchmarks.

c. evaluate the manner in which an attest client’s portfolio is being managed by investment account managers, including assessing whether the managers are

i. following the guidelines of the attest client’s investment policy statement.

ii. meeting the attest client’s investment objectives.

iii. conforming to the attest client’s stated investment parameters or risk tolerance.

d. transmit an attest client’s investment selection, with the attest client’s consent, to the attest client’s broker-dealer or equivalent, provided that the attest client has authorized the broker-dealer or equivalent to execute the transaction.

.03 However, threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards, and independence would be impaired, if, for example, a member

a. makes investment decisions on behalf of management or otherwise has discretionary authority over an attest client’s investments.

b. executes a transaction to buy or sell an attest client’s investments.
c. has custody of an attest client’s assets, such as taking temporary possession of securities purchased by an attest client. [Prior reference: paragraph .05 of ET section 101]

1.295.160 Tax Services

.01 For purposes of this interpretation, tax services include preparation of a tax return, transmittal of a tax return, and transmittal of any related tax payment to the taxing authority, signing and filing a tax return, having a power of attorney limited strictly to tax matters; and authorized representation of attest clients in administrative proceedings before a taxing authority.

.02 For purposes of this interpretation, a tax return includes all tax filings, including informational tax forms (such as estimated tax vouchers), extension forms, and Forms 990, 5500, 1099, and W-2, filed with a taxing authority or other regulatory agency.

.03 Preparation and transmittal. When a member prepares a tax return and transmits the tax return and related tax payment to a taxing authority in paper or electronic form, self-review and management participation threats to the member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist. If the member applies the “General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services” interpretation [1.295.040] of the “Independence Rule,” threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired, provided that the member does not have custody or control over the attest client’s funds or assets and the individual designated by the attest client to oversee the tax services

   a. reviews and approves the tax return and related tax payment.

   b. if required for filing, signs the tax return prior to the member transmitting the return to the taxing authority.

The following are not considered having custody or control over an attest client’s funds: making electronic tax payments authorized by an attest client pursuant to a taxing authority’s prescribed criteria (as discussed in paragraph .04), affixing the attest client’s depository account information on a tax return, or remitting an attest client’s check made payable to the taxing authority.

.04 If the member applies the “General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services” interpretation [1.295.040] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001], threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired when a member signs and files a tax return on behalf of management, provided that the member has the legal authority to do so and

   a. the taxing authority has prescribed procedures in place for an attest client to permit a member to sign and file a tax return on behalf of the attest client (for example, Forms 8879 or 8453), and such procedures meet, at the minimum, standards for electronic return originators and officers outlined in Form 8879, or

   b. an individual in management who is authorized to sign and file the attest client’s tax return provides the member with a signed statement that clearly identifies the return being filed and represents that such individual

      i. is authorized to sign and file the tax return.

      ii. has reviewed the tax return, including accompanying schedules and statements, and it is true, correct, and complete to the best of the individual’s knowledge and belief.

      iii. authorizes the member or another named individual in the member’s firm to sign and file the tax return on the attest client behalf.

.05 Authorized representation in administrative proceedings. If the member applies the “General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services” interpretation [1.295.040] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001], threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired if a
member acts as the *attest client*’s authorized representative in administrative proceedings before a taxing authority, provided that the member obtains the *attest client*’s agreement prior to committing the *attest client* to a specific resolution with the taxing authority. [Prior reference: paragraph .05 of ET section 101]

**Power of attorney.** When a member has an *attest client*’s power of attorney, the self-review, management participation, and advocacy *threats* to the covered member’s compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] may exist. If the member applies the “General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services” interpretation [1.295.040] of the “Independence Rule,” *threats* would be at an *acceptable level* and *independence* would not be *impaired*, provided that the member’s use of the power of attorney is limited strictly to tax matters and the member does not bind the *attest client* to any agreement with a taxing authority or other regulatory agency. [No prior reference: new content]

**Representation in court.** *Threats* to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an *acceptable level*, and could not be reduced to an *acceptable level* through the application of *safeguards*, and *independence* would be *impaired* if a member represents an *attest client* in court to resolve a tax dispute. For purposes of this interpretation, court encompasses a tax, district, or federal court of claims and the equivalent state, local, or foreign forums. [Prior reference: paragraph .05 of ET section 101]


**Effective Date**

**Paragraph** .06 of this interpretation is effective December 15, 2014.

---

**A nonauthoritative basis-for-conclusions document that summarizes considerations that were deemed significant in the development of this interpretation is available at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadabledocuments/basisforconclusionsnonattestservices.doc.**

In addition, nonauthoritative questions and answers regarding performance tax services are available at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadabledocuments/nonattestservicesfaqs.pdf.

---

**1.297 Independence Standards for Engagements Performed in Accordance With Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements**

**1.297.010 Application of the Independence Rule to Engagements Performed in Accordance With Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements**

**.01** The “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] and its *interpretations* apply to all *attest engagements*. However, when performing engagements to issue reports in accordance with Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements (SSAEs), when *independence* is required or when the member’s compilation report does not disclose a lack of *independence*, the *covered member* needs to be independent with respect to the responsible party(ies), as defined in the SSAEs.

**.02** If the individual or entity that engages the *covered member* (engaging entity) is not the responsible party, the *covered member* need not be *independent* of that engaging entity. However, because *threats* to the member’s compliance with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] and the “Conflicts of Interest” interpretation [1.110.010] may still exist with respect to the engaging entity, *members* should comply with this rule and interpretation.

1.297.020 Agreed-Upon Procedure Engagements Performed in Accordance With SSAEs

.01 For purposes of this interpretation, subject matter is as defined in the SSAEs.

.02 When performing agreed-upon procedures (AUP) engagements in accordance with the SSAEs, the application of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] is modified, as described in the “Application of the Independence Rule to Engagements Performed in Accordance With Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements” interpretation [1.297.010] of the “Independence Rule” and this interpretation.

.03 When providing nonattest services that would otherwise impair independence under the interpretations of the “Nonattest Services” subtopic [1.295] under the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001], threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired, provided that the nonattest services do not relate to the specific subject matter of the SSAE engagement. Threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would also not be impaired if the “General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services” interpretation [1.295.040] of the “Independence Rule” were not applied when providing the nonattest services, provided that the nonattest services do not relate to the specific subject matter of the AUP engagement.

.04 When a member or member’s firm enters into a staff augmentation arrangement as described in paragraph .01 of the “Staff Augmentation Arrangements” interpretation [1.275.007], threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired provided that the services performed by the augmented staff are unrelated to the specific subject matter of the AUP engagement.

.05 In addition, when performing an AUP engagement under the SSAEs, threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired, if the following covered members and their immediate families are independent of the responsible party(ies):

a. Individuals participating on the AUP engagement team

b. Individuals who directly supervise or manage the AUP engagement partner or partner equivalent

c. Individuals who consult with the attest engagement team regarding technical or industry-related issues specific to the AUP engagement

.06 Furthermore, threats to compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards, and independence would be impaired, if the firm had a material financial relationship with the responsible party(ies) that was covered by any of the following interpretations of the “Independence Rule”:

a. Paragraphs .01–.02 of “Overview of Financial Interests” [1.240.010]

b. “Trustee or Executor” [1.245.010]

c. “Joint Closely Held Investments” [1.265.020]


Effective Date

.07 The addition of partner equivalents to paragraph .05 is effective for engagements covering periods beginning on or after December 15, 2014.

[See Revision History Table.]
1.297.030 Engagements, Other Than AUPs, Performed in Accordance With SSAEs

.01 For purposes of this interpretation, subject matter is as defined in the SSAEs.

.02 When performing an engagement, other than an AUP, in accordance with the SSAEs, the application of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] is modified, as described in the “Application of the Independence Rule to Engagements Performed in Accordance With Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements” interpretation [1.297.010] of the “Independence Rule” and this interpretation.

.03 When providing nonattest services that would otherwise impair independence under the interpretations of the “Nonattest Services” subtopic [1.295], threats would be at an acceptable level and independence would not be impaired if the following safeguards are met:

a. Nonattest services do not relate to the specific subject matter of the SSAE engagement.


1.298 Breach of an Independence Interpretation

1.298.010 Breach of an Independence Interpretation

Introduction

.01 AICPA bylaws require members to comply with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001]. This interpretation provides guidance to assist members in evaluating and addressing the consequences of a breach of an independence interpretation and the effect on the attest engagement team’s integrity, objectivity, and professional skepticism so the member or member’s firm can determine if the consequences of a breach can be satisfactorily addressed. This interpretation also provides specific steps and actions the member should take when the member becomes aware that a breach of an independence interpretation has occurred. However, a member’s determination that the consequences of a breach of an independence interpretation have been satisfactorily addressed will not preclude an investigation or enforcement action. In any case, the member should be prepared to justify such determination.

Required Policies and Procedures Established by the Firm

.02 In order for the consequences of an independence breach to be addressed by a member or the member’s firm pursuant to the provisions of this interpretation, the firm must be compliant with QM section 10A, A Firm’s System of Quality Control (AICPA, Professional Standards), which requires the member’s firm to have established policies and procedures designed to provide it with reasonable assurance that the firm, its personnel, and, when applicable, others subject to independence requirements, maintain independence when required. The policies and procedures should enable the firm to communicate its independence requirements to its personnel and, when applicable, others subject to them; to identify and evaluate circumstances and relationships that create threats to independence; and to take appropriate action to eliminate those threats or reduce them to an acceptable level by applying safeguards or, if effective safeguards cannot be applied, withdrawing from the engagement. These policies and procedures should be designed to provide the firm with reasonable assurance that it is notified of breaches of independence requirements and to enable it to take appropriate actions to resolve such situations.

Breaches Resulting in Significant Threats

.03 In situations in which a partner or professional employee of the firm breaches an independence interpretation and the threat to independence resulting from the breach is significant such that the attest engagement team’s integrity, objectivity, and professional skepticism are compromised, the provisions of this interpretation could not address the consequences of the breach as no actions could be taken to satisfactorily address the consequences of the breach.
In situations in which the lead attest engagement partner or an individual in a position to influence the attest engagement either (1) committed the breach or (2) knows of a breach and fails to ensure the breach is promptly communicated to or known by an appropriate individual within the firm as described in this interpretation, there is a rebuttable presumption the provisions of this interpretation would not be able to address the breach as the threats to the attest engagement team’s integrity, objectivity, and professional skepticism and the threats to the appearance of independence would be considered so significant that no actions could be taken to satisfactorily address the consequences of the breach.

Identifying and Communicating a Breach

When a breach is identified, the member should, in accordance with his or her firm’s policies and procedures, promptly communicate the breach to an appropriate individual within the firm, for example, an individual or individuals with responsibility for the policies and procedures relating to independence, or the attest engagement partner (the responsible individual).

The responsible individual should report the breach to those who need to take appropriate action and, when appropriate, should report the breach to relevant network firms. The responsible individual should be satisfied that the interest or relationship that caused the breach has been terminated, suspended, or eliminated and should address the consequences of the breach. A consequence of a breach may be that termination of the attest engagement is necessary.

Evaluating the Significance of a Breach

The responsible individual should evaluate the significance of the breach and its effect on the attest engagement team’s integrity, objectivity, and professional skepticism and the ability to issue an attest report. The significance of the breach will depend on factors such as the following:

a. The nature and duration of the breach

b. The number and nature of any previous breaches with respect to the current attest engagement

c. Whether a member of the attest engagement team had knowledge of the interest or relationship that caused the breach

d. Whether the individual who caused the breach is a member of the attest engagement team or another individual for whom there are independence requirements

e. The role of the individual if the breach relates to a member of the attest engagement team

f. The effect of the service, if any, on the accounting records or the attest client’s financial statements if the breach was caused by the provision of a professional service

g. Whether a partner or partner equivalent of the firm had knowledge of the breach and failed to ensure that the breach was promptly communicated to an appropriate individual within the firm

h. Whether the breach involved solely an affiliate of a financial statement attest client and if so, the nature of the affiliate relationship

i. The extent of the self-interest, advocacy, undue influence, or other threats created by the breach

Addressing the Consequences of a Breach

Depending upon the significance of the breach, it may be necessary to terminate the attest engagement or it may be possible to take action that satisfactorily addresses the consequences of the breach. Certain breaches described in this interpretation cannot be addressed by the provisions of this interpretation. For all other breaches, the responsible individual should determine whether satisfactory action can be taken and is appropriate in the circumstances. In making this determination, the responsible individual should exercise
professional judgment and take into account whether a reasonable and informed third party, weighing the
significance of the breach, the action to be taken, and all the specific facts and circumstances available
to the member at that time, would likely conclude that the attest engagement team’s integrity, objectivity,
and professional skepticism would be compromised and therefore whether independence is impaired.

.09 Examples of actions that the responsible individual may consider include the following:

- Removing the relevant individual from the attest engagement team
- Conducting an additional review of the affected attest work or re-performing that work to the extent
  necessary; in either case, using different personnel
- Recommending that the attest client engage another firm to review or re-perform the affected attest
  work to the extent necessary
- Engaging another firm to evaluate the results of the nonattest service or having another firm re-
  perform the nonattest service to the extent necessary to enable it to take responsibility for the service
  if the breach relates to a nonattest service that affects the accounting records or an amount that is
  recorded in the financial statements

Communicating With Those Charged With Governance at the Attest Client

.10 If the responsible individual determines that action cannot be taken to satisfactorily address the
consequences of the breach, the responsible individual should inform those charged with governance as
soon as practicable and take the steps necessary to terminate the attest engagement in compliance with
any applicable legal or regulatory requirements relevant to terminating the attest engagement. Where
termination is not permitted by law or regulation, the responsible individual should comply with any
reporting or disclosure requirements.

.11 If the responsible individual determines that action can be taken to satisfactorily address the consequences
of the breach, the responsible individual should discuss the breach and the action taken or proposed to be
taken with those charged with governance as soon as practicable, unless those charged with governance
have specified an alternative timing for reporting less significant breaches. The matters to be discussed
should include the following:

- The significance of the breach, including its nature and duration
- How the breach occurred and how it was identified
- The action taken or proposed to be taken and the responsible individual’s rationale for how the action
  will satisfactorily address the consequences of the breach and enable the firm to issue the attest report
- The conclusion that, in the responsible individual’s professional judgment, the integrity, objectivity,
  and professional skepticism of the attest engagement team has not been compromised and the
  rationale for that conclusion
- Any steps that the responsible individual has taken or proposes to take to reduce or avoid the risk
  of further breaches occurring

.12 The responsible individual should communicate in writing with those charged with governance all matters
discussed in accordance with the paragraph above and obtain the concurrence of those charged with
governance that action can be, or has been, taken to satisfactorily address the consequences of the breach.
The communication shall include a description of the firm’s policies and procedures relevant to the breach
designed to provide it with reasonable assurance that independence is maintained and any steps that the
firm has taken, or proposes to take, to reduce or avoid the risk of further breaches occurring. If those
charged with governance do not concur that the action satisfactorily addresses the consequences of the
breach, the responsible individual should take the steps necessary to terminate the attest engagement, where permitted by law or regulation, in compliance with any applicable legal or regulatory requirements relevant to terminating the attest engagement. Where termination is not permitted by law or regulation, the responsible individual should comply with any reporting or disclosure requirements.

**Breaches Relating to Previously Issued Reports**

If the breach occurred prior to the issuance of the previous attest report, the responsible individual should comply with this section in evaluating the significance of the breach and its effect on the attest engagement team’s objectivity, integrity, and professional skepticism and its ability to issue an attest report in the current period. The responsible individual should also consider the effect of the breach, if any, on the attest engagement team’s integrity, objectivity, and professional skepticism in relation to any previously issued attest reports, and the possibility of withdrawing such attest reports in accordance with professional standards, and discuss the matter with those charged with governance.

**Documentation**

The responsible individual should document the breach, the action taken, key decisions made and all the matters discussed with those charged with governance and any discussions with a professional body, relevant regulator, or oversight authority. When the firm continues with the attest engagement, the matters to be documented should also include the conclusion that, in the responsible individual’s professional judgment, the integrity, objectivity, and professional skepticism of the attest engagement team have not been compromised and the rationale for why the action taken satisfactorily addressed the consequences of the breach such that the firm could issue an attest report. Failure to prepare the required documentation does not impair independence provided the member can demonstrate the member satisfactorily addressed the consequences of the breach and discussed the breach, the action taken, and key decisions made with those charged with governance, and as applicable, a professional body, relevant regulator, or oversight authority. However, failure to prepare the required documentation would be considered a violation of the “Compliance With Standards Rule” [1.310.001].


**Effective Date**

This interpretation is effective March 31, 2016. Early implementation is allowed.

1.300 General Standards

1.300.001 General Standards Rule

A member shall comply with the following standards and with any interpretations thereof by bodies designated by Council:

- **Professional Competence.** Undertake only those professional services that the member or the member’s firm can reasonably expect to be completed with professional competence.
- **Due Professional Care.** Exercise due professional care in the performance of professional services.
- **Planning and Supervision.** Adequately plan and supervise the performance of professional services.
- **Sufficient Relevant Data.** Obtain sufficient relevant data to afford a reasonable basis for conclusions or recommendations in relation to any professional services performed.

(See appendix A, “Council Resolution Designating Bodies to Promulgate Technical Standards.”) [Prior reference: paragraph .01 of ET section 201]
Interpretations Under the General Standards Rule

1.300.005 Application of the Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice and Ethical Conflicts

.01 In the absence of an interpretation of the “General Standards Rule” [1.300.001] that addresses a particular relationship or circumstance, a member should apply the “Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice” [1.000.010].

.02 A member would be considered in violation of the “General Standards Rule” [1.300.001] if the member cannot demonstrate that safeguards were applied that eliminated or reduced significant threats to an acceptable level.

.03 A member should consider the guidance in “Ethical Conflicts” [1.000.020] when addressing ethical conflicts that may arise when the member encounters obstacles to following an appropriate course of action. Such obstacles may be due to internal or external pressures or to conflicts in applying relevant professional or legal standards, or both. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.04 Paragraphs .01 and .02 are effective December 15, 2015, and early implementation is allowed provided the member has implemented the revised code. Paragraph .03 is effective December 15, 2014.

1.300.010 Competence

.01 Competence, in this context, means that the member or member’s staff possess the appropriate technical qualifications to perform professional services and that the member, as required, supervises and evaluates the quality of work performed. Competence encompasses knowledge of the profession’s standards, the techniques and technical subject matter involved, and the ability to exercise sound judgment in applying such knowledge in the performance of professional services.

.02 A member’s agreement to perform professional services implies that the member has the necessary competence to complete those services according to professional standards and to apply the member’s knowledge and skill with reasonable care and diligence. However, the member does not assume a responsibility for infallibility of knowledge or judgment.

.03 The member may have the knowledge required to complete the services in accordance with professional standards prior to performance. A normal part of providing professional services involves performing additional research or consulting with others to gain sufficient competence.

.04 If a member is unable to gain sufficient competence, the member should suggest, in fairness to the client and public, the engagement of a competent person to perform the needed professional service, either independently or as an associate. [Prior reference: paragraph .02 of ET section 201]

1.300.020 Supervision of a Specialist on Consulting Engagements

.01 A member who employs a specialist to perform consulting services for the member’s clients must be qualified to supervise and evaluate the work of that specialist. Although the member is not required to be able to perform each of the specialist’s tasks, the member should be able to define the tasks and evaluate the end product. [Prior reference: paragraphs .017–.018 of ET section 291]

1.300.030 Submission of Financial Statements

.01 When a member prepares or submits financial statements as a stockholder, a partner, a director, an officer, or an employee of an entity using the firm’s letterhead or similar identification, the member should comply with the “Compliance With Standards Rule” [1.310.001], including any requirements to disclose a lack of independence in the member’s report.

1.300.040 Use of a Third-Party Service Provider

A member who uses a third-party service provider to assist the member in providing professional services such as bookkeeping, tax preparation, or consulting or attest services, including related clerical or data entry functions, is required to comply with the “General Standards Rule” [1.300.001] and the “Compliance With Standards Rule” [1.310.001]. To accomplish this,

a. before using a third-party service provider, the member should ensure that the third-party service provider has the required professional qualifications, technical skills, and other resources. Factors that can be helpful in evaluating a prospective third-party service provider include business, financial, and personal references from banks, other CPAs, and other customers of the third-party service provider; the third-party service provider’s professional reputation and recognition in the community; published materials (articles and books that he or she has authored); and the member’s personal evaluation of the third-party service provider.

b. the member must adequately plan and supervise the third-party service provider’s professional services so that the member ensures that the services are performed with competence and due professional care. The member must also obtain sufficient relevant data to support the work product and comply with all technical standards applicable to the professional services.

The member’s responsibility for planning and supervising the third-party service provider’s work does not extend beyond the requirements of applicable professional standards, which may vary depending upon the nature of the member’s engagement.


A nonauthoritative basis-for-conclusion document summarizing considerations that were deemed significant in the development of this interpretation is available at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadeddocuments/basisforconclusionsoutsourcing.pdf.

1.310 Compliance With Standards

1.310.001 Compliance With Standards Rule

A member who performs auditing, review, compilation, management consulting, tax, or other professional services shall comply with standards promulgated by bodies designated by Council.

See Appendix A “Council Resolution Designating Bodies to Promulgate Technical Standards.” [Prior reference: paragraph .01 of ET section 202]
Interpretations Under the Compliance with Standards Rule

1.310.005 Application of the Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice and Ethical Conflicts

.01 In the absence of an interpretation of the “Compliance With Standards Rule” [1.310.001] that addresses a particular relationship or circumstance, a member should apply the “Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice” [1.000.010].

.02 A member would be considered in violation of the “Compliance With Standards Rule” [1.310.001] if the member cannot demonstrate that safeguards were applied that eliminated or reduced significant threats to an acceptable level.

.03 A member should consider the guidance in “Ethical Conflicts” [1.000.020] when addressing ethical conflicts that may arise when the member encounters obstacles to following an appropriate course of action. Such obstacles may be due to internal or external pressures or to conflicts in applying relevant professional or legal standards, or both. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.04 Paragraphs .01 and .02 are effective December 15, 2015, and early implementation is allowed provided the member has implemented the revised code. Paragraph .03 is effective December 15, 2014.

1.320 Accounting Principles

1.320.001 Accounting Principles Rule

.01 A member shall not (1) express an opinion or state affirmatively that the financial statements or other financial data of any entity are presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles or (2) state that he or she is not aware of any material modifications that should be made to such statements or data in order for them to be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, if such statements or data contain any departure from an accounting principle promulgated by bodies designated by Council to establish such principles that has a material effect on the statements or data taken as a whole. If, however, the statements or data contain such a departure and the member can demonstrate that due to unusual circumstances the financial statements or data would otherwise have been misleading, the member can comply with the rule by describing the departure, its approximate effects, if practicable, and the reasons why compliance with the principle would result in a misleading statement.

.02 See appendix A “Council Resolution Designating Bodies to Promulgate Technical Standards.” [Prior reference: paragraph .01 of ET section 203]

Interpretations Under the Accounting Standards Rule

1.320.005 Application of the Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice and Ethical Conflicts

.01 In the absence of an interpretation of the “Accounting Principles Rule” [1.320.001] that addresses a particular relationship or circumstance, a member should apply the “Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice” [1.000.010].

.02 A member would be considered in violation of the “Accounting Principles Rule” [1.320.001] if the member cannot demonstrate that safeguards were applied that eliminated or reduced significant threats to an acceptable level.
Part 1 — Members in Public Practice

.03 A member should consider the guidance in “Ethical Conflicts” [1.000.020] when addressing ethical conflicts that may arise when the member encounters obstacles to following an appropriate course of action. Such obstacles may be due to internal or external pressures or to conflicts in applying relevant professional or legal standards, or both. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.04 Paragraphs .01 and .02 are effective December 15, 2015, and early implementation is allowed provided the member has implemented the revised code. Paragraph .03 is effective December 15, 2014.

1.320.010 Responsibility for Affirming That Financial Statements Are in Conformity With the Applicable Financial Reporting Framework

.01 A member shall not state affirmatively that an entity’s financial statements or other financial data are presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) if such statements or data contain any departure from an accounting principle promulgated by a body designated by Council to establish such principles. Members who affirm that financial statements or other financial data are presented in conformity with GAAP should comply with the “Accounting Principles Rule” [1.320.001]. A member’s representation in a letter or other communication that an entity’s financial statements are in conformity with GAAP may be considered an affirmative statement within the meaning of this rule with respect to the member who signed the letter or other communication (for example, the member signed a report to a regulatory authority). [Prior reference: paragraph .05 of ET section 203]

1.320.020 Status of Financial Accounting Standards Board, Governmental Accounting Standards Board, Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board, and International Accounting Standards Board Interpretations

.01 The “Accounting Principles Rule” [1.320.001] authorizes Council to designate bodies to establish accounting principles. Council has designated the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) as such a body and has resolved that FASB Accounting Standards Codification® (ASC) constitutes accounting principles as contemplated in the rule. Council designated the Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB), with respect to Statements of Governmental Accounting Standards issued in July 1984 and thereafter, as the body to establish financial accounting principles for state and local governmental entities, pursuant to the “Accounting Principles Rule.” Council designated the Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board (FASAB), with respect to Statements of Federal Accounting Standards adopted and issued in March 1993 and subsequently, as the body to establish accounting principles for federal government entities, pursuant to the “Accounting Principles Rule.” Council designated the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) as an accounting body for purposes of establishing international financial accounting and reporting principles.

.02 Reference to GAAP in the “Accounting Principles Rule” [1.320.001] means those accounting principles promulgated by bodies designated by Council, which are listed in paragraph .01 and in appendix A, “Council Resolution Designating Bodies to Promulgate Technical Standards.”

.03 The Professional Ethics Division will look to the codification or statements and any interpretations thereof issued by FASB, GASB, FASAB, or IASB in determining whether a member has departed from an accounting principle established by a designated accounting standard-setter in FASB ASC, a Statement of Governmental Accounting Standards, a Statement of Federal Accounting Standards, or International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS). [Prior reference: paragraph .03 of ET section 203]

1.320.030 Departures From Generally Accepted Accounting Principles

.01 It is difficult to anticipate all the circumstances in which accounting principles may be applied. However, there is a strong presumption that adherence to GAAP would, in nearly all instances, result in financial statements that are not misleading. The “Accounting Principles Rule” [1.320.001] recognizes that, upon
occasion, there may be unusual circumstances when the literal application of GAAP would have the effect of rendering financial statements misleading. In such cases, the proper accounting treatment to apply is that which will not render the financial statements misleading.

.02 The question of what constitutes unusual circumstances, as referred to in the “Accounting Principles Rule” [1.320.001], is a matter of professional judgment involving the ability to support the position that adherence to a promulgated principle within GAAP would be regarded generally by reasonable persons as producing misleading financial statements.

.03 Examples of circumstances that may justify a departure from GAAP include new legislation or evolution of a new form of business transaction. Examples of circumstances that do not justify departures from GAAP include an unusual degree of materiality or conflicting industry practices. [Prior reference: paragraph .02 of ET section 203]

.04 If the statements or data contain such departures, see the “Accounting Principles Rule” [1.320.001] for further guidance.

1.320.040 Financial Statements Prepared Pursuant to Financial Reporting Frameworks Other Than GAAP

.01 Reference to GAAP in the “Accounting Principles Rule” [1.320.001] means those accounting principles promulgated by bodies designated by Council, which are listed in appendix A. The bodies designed by Council to promulgate accounting principles are

a. FASAB,

b. FASB,

c. GASB, and

d. IASB.

.02 Financial statements prepared pursuant to other accounting principles would be considered financial reporting frameworks other than GAAP within the context of the “Accounting Principles Rule” [1.320.001].

.03 However, the “Accounting Principles Rule” [1.320.001] does not preclude a member from preparing or reporting on client financial statements that have been prepared pursuant to financial reporting frameworks other than GAAP, such as

a. financial reporting frameworks generally accepted in another country, including jurisdictional variations of IFRS such that the client’s financial statements do not meet the requirements for full compliance with IFRS, as promulgated by the IASB;

b. financial reporting frameworks prescribed by an agreement or a contract; or

c. other special purpose frameworks, including statutory financial reporting provisions required by law or a U.S. or foreign governmental regulatory body to whose jurisdiction the entity is subject.

.04 In such circumstances, however, the client’s financial statements and member’s reports thereon should not purport that the financial statements are in accordance with GAAP, and the financial statements or reports on those financial statements, or both, should clarify the financial reporting framework(s) used. [Prior reference: paragraph .06 of ET section 203]

1.400 Acts Discreditable
1.400.001 Acts Discreditable Rule

.01 A member shall not commit an act discreditable to the profession. [Prior reference: paragraph .01 of ET section 501]

Interpretations Under the Acts Discreditable Rule

1.400.005 Application of the Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice and Ethical Conflicts

.01 In the absence of an interpretation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [1.400.001] that addresses a particular relationship or circumstance, a member should apply the “Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice” [1.000.010].

.02 A member would be considered in violation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [1.400.001] if the member cannot demonstrate that safeguards were applied that eliminated or reduced significant threats to an acceptable level.

.03 A member should consider the guidance in “Ethical Conflicts” [1.000.020] when addressing ethical conflicts that may arise when the member encounters obstacles to following an appropriate course of action. Such obstacles may be due to internal or external pressures or to conflicts in applying relevant professional and legal standards, or both. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.04 Paragraphs .01 and .02 are effective December 15, 2015, and early implementation is allowed provided the member has implemented the revised code. Paragraph .03 is effective December 15, 2014.

1.400.010 Discrimination and Harassment in Employment Practices

.01 A member would be presumed to have committed an act discreditable to the profession, in violation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [1.400.001] if a final determination, no longer subject to appeal, is made by a court or an administrative agency of competent jurisdiction that a member has violated any antidiscrimination laws of the United States, a state, or a municipality, including those related to sexual and other forms of harassment. [Prior reference: paragraph .03 of ET section 501]

1.400.020 Solicitation or Disclosure of CPA Examination Questions and Answers

.01 A member who solicits or knowingly discloses the Uniform CPA Examination question(s) or answer(s), or both, without the AICPA’s written authorization shall be considered to have committed an act discreditable to the profession, in violation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [1.400.001]. [Prior reference: paragraph .07 of ET section 501]

1.400.030 Failure to File a Tax Return or Pay a Tax Liability

.01 A member who fails to comply with applicable federal, state, or local laws or regulations regarding (a) the timely filing of the member’s personal tax returns or tax returns of the member’s firm that the member has the authority to timely file or (b) the timely remittance of all payroll and other taxes collected on behalf of others may be considered to have committed an act discreditable to the profession, in violation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [1.400.001]. [Prior reference: paragraph .08 of ET section 501]

1.400.040 Negligence in the Preparation of Financial Statements or Records

.01 A member shall be considered in violation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [1.400.001] if the member, by virtue of his or her negligence, does any of the following:
Part 1 — Members in Public Practice

a. Makes, or permits or directs another to make, materially false and misleading entries in the financial statements or records of an entity.

b. Fails to correct an entity’s financial statements that are materially false and misleading when the member has the authority to record an entry.

c. Signs, or permits or directs another to sign, a document containing materially false and misleading information. [Prior reference: paragraph .05 of ET section 501]

1.400.050 Governmental Bodies, Commissions, or Other Regulatory Agencies

.01 Many governmental bodies, commissions, or other regulatory agencies have established requirements, such as audit standards, guides, rules, and regulations, that members are required to follow in the preparation of financial statements or related information or in performing attest or similar services for entities subject to their jurisdiction. For example, the SEC; the Federal Communications Commission; state insurance commissions; and other regulatory agencies, such as the PCAOB, have established such requirements.

.02 If a member prepares financial statements or related information for purposes of reporting to such bodies, commissions, or regulatory agencies, the member should follow the requirements of such organizations, in addition to the applicable financial reporting framework.

.03 If a member agrees to perform an attest or a similar service for the purpose of reporting to such bodies, commissions, or regulatory agencies, the member should follow such requirements, in addition to the applicable financial reporting framework.

.04 A member’s material departure from such requirements would be considered a violation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [1.400.001] unless the member discloses in the financial statements or his or her report, as applicable, that such requirements were not followed and the applicable reasons. [Prior reference: paragraph .06 of ET section 501]

1.400.055 Governmental Audits

.01 Engagements for audits of government grants, government units, or other recipients of government monies typically require that such audits be in compliance with government audit standards, guides, procedures, statutes, rules, and regulations, in addition to GAAS.

.02 If a member accepts such an engagement and undertakes an obligation to follow specified government audit standards, guides, procedures, statutes, rules, and regulations, the member is obligated to follow such requirements, in addition to GAAS.

.03 Failure to do so is a violation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [1.400.001] unless the member discloses in his or her report that such requirements were not followed and the applicable reasons for not following the requirements. [Prior reference: paragraph .04 of ET section 501]

1.400.060 Indemnification and Limitation of Liability Provisions

.01 Certain governmental bodies, commissions, or other regulatory agencies (collectively, regulators) have established requirements through laws, regulations, or published interpretations that

a. prohibit entities subject to their regulation (regulated entity) from including certain types of indemnification and limitation of liability provisions in agreements for the performance of audit or other attest services that are required by such regulators or

b. provide that the existence of such provisions disqualifies a member from rendering such services to these entities.
For example, federal banking regulators, state insurance commissions, and the SEC have established such requirements.

.02 If a member enters into or directs or knowingly permits another individual to enter into a contract for the performance of audit or other attest services that are subject to the requirements of these regulators, the member should not include or knowingly permit or direct another individual to include an indemnification or limitation of liability provision that would cause the regulated entity or a member to be in violation of such requirements or disqualify a member from providing such services to the regulated entity. A member who enters into or directs or knowingly permits another individual to enter into such an agreement for the performance of audit or other attest services would be considered in violation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [1.400.001].


1.400.070 Confidential Information Obtained From Employment or Volunteer Activities

.01 A member should maintain the confidentiality of his or her employer’s or firm’s (employer) confidential information and should not use or disclose any confidential employer information obtained as a result of an employment relationship, such as discussions with the employer’s vendors, customers, or lenders (for example, any confidential information pertaining to a current or previous employer, subsidiary, affiliate, or parent thereof, as well as any entities for which the member is working in a volunteer capacity).

.02 For purposes of this interpretation, confidential employer information is any proprietary information pertaining to the employer or any organization for whom the member may work in a volunteer capacity that is not known to be available to the public and is obtained as a result of such relationships.

.03 A member should be alert to the possibility of inadvertent disclosure, particularly to a close business associate or close relative or immediate family member. The member should also take reasonable steps to ensure that staff under his or her control or others within the employing organization and persons from whom advice and assistance are obtained are aware of the confidential nature of the information.

.04 When a member changes employment, a member should not use confidential employer information acquired as a result of a prior employment relationship to his or her personal advantage or the advantage of a third party, such as a current or prospective employer. The requirement to maintain the confidentiality of an employer’s confidential information continues even after the end of the relationship between a member and the employer. However, the member is entitled to use experience and expertise gained through prior employment relationships.

.05 A member would be considered in violation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [1.400.001] if the member discloses or uses any confidential employer information acquired as a result of employment or volunteer relationships without the proper authority or specific consent of the employer or organization for whom the member may work in a volunteer capacity, unless there is a legal or professional responsibility to use or disclose such information.

.06 The following are examples of situations in which members are permitted or may be required to disclose confidential employer information or when such disclosure may be appropriate:

   a. Disclosure is permitted by law and authorized by the employer.

   b. Disclosure is required by law, for example, to

      i. comply with a validly issued and enforceable subpoena or summons or

      ii. inform the appropriate public authorities of violations of law that have been discovered.
c. There is a professional responsibility or right to disclose information, when not prohibited by law, to

i. initiate a complaint with, or respond to any inquiry made by, the Professional Ethics Division or trial board of the AICPA or a duly constituted investigative or disciplinary body of a state CPA society, board of accountancy, or other regulatory body;

ii. protect the member’s professional interests in legal proceedings;

iii. comply with professional standards and other ethics requirements; or

iv. report potential concerns regarding questionable accounting, auditing, or other matters to the employer’s confidential complaint hotline or those charged with governance.

d. Disclosure is permitted on behalf of the employer to

i. obtain financing with lenders;

ii. communicate with vendors, clients, and customers; or

iii. communicate with the employer’s external accountant, attorneys, regulators, and other business professionals.

.07 In deciding whether to disclose confidential employer information, relevant factors to consider include the following:

a. Whether all the relevant information is known and substantiated to the extent that it is practicable. When the situation involves unsubstantiated facts, incomplete information, or unsubstantiated conclusions, the member should use professional judgment in determining the type of disclosure to be made, if any.

b. Whether the parties to whom the communication may be addressed are appropriate recipients.

.08 A member may wish to consult with his or her legal counsel prior to disclosing, or determining whether to disclose, confidential employer information.

.09 Refer to the “Subordination of Judgment” interpretation [1.130.020] of the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] and the “Confidential Information” topic [1.700] for additional guidance. [Prior reference: paragraph .10 of ET section 501]

1.400.090 False, Misleading, or Deceptive Acts in Promoting or Marketing Professional Services

.01 A member would be in violation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [1.400.001] if the member promotes or markets the member’s abilities to provide professional services or makes claims about the member’s experience or qualifications in a manner that is false, misleading, or deceptive.

.02 Promotional efforts would be false, misleading, or deceptive if they contain any claim or representation that would likely cause a reasonable person to be misled or deceived. This includes any representation about CPA licensure or any other professional certification or accreditation that is not in compliance with the requirements of the relevant licensing authority or designating body.

.03 Refer to the “False, Misleading, or Deceptive Acts in Advertising or Solicitations” interpretation [1.600.010] of the “Advertising and Other Forms of Solicitation Rule” [1.600.001] for additional guidance. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

1.400.100 Use of the CPA Credential

.01 A member should refer to applicable state accountancy laws and board of accountancy rules and regulations for guidance regarding the use of the CPA credential. A member who fails to follow the accountancy laws, rules, and regulations on use of the CPA credential in any of the jurisdictions in which the CPA practices would be considered to have used the CPA credential in a manner that is false, misleading, or deceptive and in violation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [1.400.001]. [Prior reference .12 section 501]

1.400.200 Records Requests

Terminology

.01 The following terms are defined here solely for use with this interpretation:

a. A client includes current and former clients.

b. A member means the member or the member’s firm.

c. Client-provided records are accounting or other records, including hardcopy and electronic reproductions of such records, belonging to the client that were provided to the member by, or on behalf of, the client.

d. Member-prepared records are accounting or other records that the member was not specifically engaged to prepare and that are not in the client’s books and records or are otherwise not available to the client, thus rendering the client’s financial information incomplete. Examples include adjusting, closing, combining, or consolidating journal entries (including computations supporting such entries) and supporting schedules and documents that the member proposed or prepared as part of an engagement (for example, an audit).

e. Member’s work products are deliverables set forth in the terms of the engagement, such as tax returns.

f. Working papers are all other items prepared solely for purposes of the engagement and include items prepared by the

i. member, such as audit programs, analytical review schedules, and statistical sampling results and analyses.

ii. client at the request of the member and reflecting testing or other work done by the member.

g. Make records available means to provide the records in any format that is usable and accessible, whether electronic or otherwise, regardless of the format in which they were received.

h. Beneficiary is a person or entity for which the engaging entity has requested the member to perform professional services.

Applicability

.02 When a person or entity engages a member to perform professional services (engaging entity) with respect to a beneficiary, the member will be considered in compliance with the requirements of this interpretation related to client-provided records if the member makes these records available to the person or entity that provided the records to the member or to the individual designated or held out as the entity’s or individual’s representative.

.03 The member will be considered in compliance with the requirements of this interpretation related to member-prepared records and a member’s work products if the member makes such records and work
products available to the beneficiary or to the individual designated or held out as the beneficiary’s representative. For example, if a company engages a member to perform personal tax services for the benefit of its executives, the member would be in compliance with the interpretation if the member made the tax returns available to the executives (see the “Confidential Client Information Rule” [1.700.001]).

.04 When an engaging entity engages a member to perform professional services with respect to another entity that is not the beneficiary of the professional services, absent an agreement stating otherwise, the member would be in compliance with the requirements of this interpretation related to a member’s work products if the member made such work products available to the engaging entity or to the individual designated or held out as the engaging entity’s representative. For example, if a company engaged a member to value the assets of another company for a possible acquisition, absent an agreement stating otherwise, the member would be in compliance with this interpretation if the member made the valuation report available only to the engaging entity.

Interpretation

.05 Members must comply with the rules and regulations of authoritative regulatory bodies, such as the member’s state board(s) of accountancy, when the member performs services for a client and is subject to the rules and regulations of such regulatory bodies. For example, a member’s state board(s) of accountancy may not permit a member to withhold certain records, even though fees are due to the member for the work performed. Failure to comply with the more restrictive provisions of the applicable regulatory body’s rules and regulations concerning the return of certain records would constitute a violation of this interpretation.

.06 When an initial request for client-provided records is received, the member should make those records in the member’s custody or control available to the person or entity that provided the records to the member. The member may charge a reasonable fee for the time and expense incurred to retrieve, copy, and ship such records; however, the client-provided records may not be withheld for nonpayment of such fees.

.07 A member and the client or beneficiary may agree to terms other than those stated in this paragraph. When this occurs, the member should respond in accordance with such agreement. Otherwise, a member should respond to a request for member-prepared records or a member’s work products that are in the member’s custody or control and that have not previously been made available to the client or, if applicable, to the beneficiary as follows:

a. The member should make available member-prepared records relating to a completed and issued work product; however, such records may be withheld if fees are due to the member for that specific work product.

b. Member’s work products should be made available; however, such work products may be withheld if

i. fees are due to the member for the specific work product;

ii. the work product is incomplete;

iii. for purposes of complying with professional standards (for example, withholding an audit report with outstanding audit issues); or

iv. threatened or outstanding litigation exists concerning the engagement or the member’s work.

.08 Once a member has complied with paragraphs .02–.07, the member is under no ethical obligation to

a. comply with any subsequent requests to again make records or copies of records available. However, if after complying with a request, a loss of records due to a natural disaster or an act of war is experienced, the member should, when practicable, comply with an additional request to make such records available.
b. retain records for periods that exceed applicable professional standards, state and federal statutes and regulations, and contractual agreements relating to the service performed. [Prior reference: paragraph .02 of ET section 501]

c. make the records available to any other associated party, such as the general partner, majority shareholder, or spouse. [Prior reference: paragraphs .377–.378 of ET section 591]

.09 Working papers are the member’s property, and the member is not required to make such information available. However, state and federal statutes and regulations and contractual agreements may impose additional requirements on the member.

.10 In fulfilling a request for the member’s copy of client-provided records that was previously made available to the client or a party identified in paragraph .02, member-prepared records, or a member’s work products, the member may

a. charge a reasonable fee for the time and expense incurred to retrieve, copy, and ship such records and require payment before the member makes the records available.

b. make the requested records available in any usable and accessible format. However, the member is not required to convert records that are not in electronic format to electronic format. If the records are requested in a specific format and the records are available in such format within the member’s custody and control, the request should be honored. In addition, the member is not required to make formulas available, unless the member was engaged to make such formulas available as part of a completed work product or the formulas were used to create member-prepared records without which the client’s financial information would be incomplete.

c. make and retain copies of any records that the member already made available.

.11 When a member is required to return or make records available, the member should comply as soon as practicable but, absent extenuating circumstances, no later than 45 days after the request is made.

.12 The fact that the statutes of the state in which the member practices grant the member a lien on certain records in his or her custody or control does not relieve the member of his or her obligation to comply with this interpretation. [Prior reference: paragraph .02 of ET section 501]

.13 A member would be considered in violation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [1.400.001] if the member does not comply with the requirements of this interpretation.


[See Revision History Table.]
prohibited by law, including but not limited to the rules and regulations of the applicable state boards of accountancy. The member should not transfer any client files to the successor firm until either the client’s consent is obtained or the 90 days has lapsed, whichever is shorter. The member is encouraged to retain evidence of consent, whether obtained from the client or presumed after 90 days.

b. With respect to files not subject to the sale or transfer, make arrangements to return any client records that the member is required to provide to the client as set forth in the “Records Request” interpretation [1.400.200] unless the member and client agree to some other arrangement.

.02 In cases in which the member is unable to contact the client, client files and records not transferred should be retained in a confidential manner and in accordance with the firm’s record retention policy or as required by applicable legal or regulatory requirements, whichever is longer. When practicing before the IRS or other taxing authorities or regulatory bodies, members should ensure compliance with any requirements that are more restrictive.

Discontinuation of Member’s Practice

.03 A member who discontinues his or her practice but does not sell or transfer the practice to a successor firm, should do all of the following:

a. Notify each client in writing of the discontinuation of the practice. The member is encouraged to retain evidence of notification made to clients. The member is not required to provide notification to former clients of the firm.

b. Make arrangements to return any client records that the member is required to provide to the client as set forth in the “Records Request” interpretation [1.400.200] unless the member and client agree to some other arrangement.

.04 In cases in which the member is unable to contact the client, client files should be retained in a confidential manner and in accordance with the firm’s record retention policy or as required by applicable legal or regulatory requirements, whichever is longer. When practicing before the IRS or other taxing authorities or regulatory bodies, members should ensure compliance with any requirements that are more restrictive.

Acquisition of Practice by a Member

.05 A member who acquires all or part of a practice from another person, firm, or entity (predecessor firm) should be satisfied that all clients of the predecessor firm subject to the acquisition have, as required in paragraph .01, consented to the member’s continuation of professional services and retention of any client files or records the successor firm retains.

.06 A member will be considered in violation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [1.400.001] if the member does not comply with any of the requirements of this interpretation.

Effective Date

.07 This interpretation is effective June 30, 2017. Early implementation is allowed.

Nonauthoritative questions and answers related to form of communication and transfer of client files to another partner in the firm or during a merger are available in the FAQ document at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadabledocuments/ethics-general-faqs.pdf.

1.400.210 Removing Client Files or Proprietary Information From a Firm

.01 A member whose employment relationship is terminated would be considered in violation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [1.400.001] if the member takes or retains (a) originals or copies (in any format) from
the firm’s client files or (b) proprietary information without the firm’s permission, unless the member has a contractual arrangement with the firm allowing such action. [Prior reference: paragraphs .381–.382 of ET section 591]

.02 A firm’s ownership agreement would govern ownership of client files and proprietary information; accordingly, this interpretation would not apply to owners of firms. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.03 Paragraph .02 of this interpretation is effective December 15, 2014.

1.400.240 Use of Confidential Information From Nonclient Sources

.01 If a member discloses confidential information obtained from a prospective client or nonclient without consent, the member would be in violation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [1.400.001]. [Prior reference: paragraphs .027–.028 of ET section 391 and new content]

Effective Date

.02 This interpretation is effective December 15, 2014.

1.500 Fees and Other Types of Remuneration

1.500.008 Unpaid Fees


Effective Date

.02 Effective December 15, 2014.

1.510 Contingent Fees

1.510.001 Contingent Fees Rule

.01 A member in public practice shall not

a. Perform for a contingent fee any professional services for, or receive such a fee from a client for whom the member or the member’s firm performs,

i. an audit or review of a financial statement; or

ii. a compilation of a financial statement when the member expects, or reasonably might expect, that a third party will use the financial statement and the member’s compilation report does not disclose a lack of independence; or

iii. an examination of prospective financial information; or

b. Prepare an original or amended tax return or claim for a tax refund for a contingent fee for any client.

.02 The prohibition in a. above applies during the period in which the member or member’s firm is engaged to perform any of the services listed above and the period covered by any historical financial statements involved in any such listed services.

.03 Except as stated in the next sentence, a contingent fee is a fee established for the performance of any service pursuant to an arrangement in which no fee will be charged unless a specified finding or result
is attained, or in which the amount of the fee is otherwise dependent upon the finding or result of such service. Solely for purposes of this rule, fees are not regarded as being contingent if fixed by courts or other public authorities, or, in tax matters, if determined based on the results of judicial proceedings or the findings of governmental agencies.

.04 A member’s fees may vary depending, for example, on the complexity of services rendered. [Prior reference: paragraph .01 of ET section 302]

Interpretations Under the Contingent Fees Rule

1.510.005 Application of the Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice and Ethical Conflicts

.01 In the absence of an interpretation of the “Contingent Fees Rule” [1.510.001] that addresses a particular relationship or circumstance, a member should apply the “Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice” [1.000.010].

.02 A member would be considered in violation of the “Contingent Fees Rule” [1.510.001] if the member cannot demonstrate that safeguards were applied that eliminated or reduced significant threats to an acceptable level.

.03 A member should consider the guidance in “Ethical Conflicts” [1.000.020] when addressing ethical conflicts that may arise when the member encounters obstacles to following an appropriate course of action. Such obstacles may be due to internal or external pressures or to conflicts in applying relevant professional and legal standards, or both. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.04 Paragraphs .01 and .02 are effective December 15, 2015, and early implementation is allowed provided the member has implemented the revised code. Paragraph .03 is effective December 15, 2014.

1.510.010 Tax Matters

.01 This interpretation defines certain terms used in the “Contingent Fees Rule” [1.510.001] and provides examples of the application of the rule in tax matters. When practicing before the IRS or before other taxing authorities, members should also comply with other applicable and more restrictive requirements.

Contingent Fee Language

.02 Preparation of an original or amended tax return or claim for tax refund includes giving advice on events that have occurred at the time that the advice is given if such advice is directly relevant to determining the existence, character, or amount of a schedule, an entry, or another portion of a return or claim for refund.

.03 A fee is considered determined based on the findings of governmental agencies and, therefore, is not a contingent fee if the member can demonstrate a reasonable expectation, at the time of a fee arrangement, that a government agency will provide substantive consideration of the subject matter with respect to the member’s client. Such an expectation is not reasonable if the member prepares a client’s original tax returns as outlined in paragraph .02 above.

Examples of When a Contingent Fee Is Permitted

.04 The following are examples of circumstances in which a contingent fee is permitted under the “Contingent Fees Rule” [1.510.001]:

a. Representing a client in connection with a revenue agent’s examination of the client’s federal or state income tax return
b. Filing an amended federal or state income tax return claiming a tax refund based on a tax issue that is the subject of a test case involving a different taxpayer or with respect to which the taxing authority is developing a position

c. Filing an amended federal or state income tax return (or refund claim) claiming a tax refund in an amount greater than the threshold for review by the Joint Committee on Taxation or state taxing authority

d. Requesting a refund of either overpayments of interest or penalties charged to a client’s account or tax deposits that a federal or state taxing authority improperly accounted for in circumstances in which the taxing authority has established procedures for the substantive review of such refund requests

e. Requesting, by means of a protest or similar document, the state or local taxing authority’s consideration of a reduction in a property’s assessed value under an established taxing authority’s review process for hearing all taxpayer arguments relating to assessed value

f. Representing a client in connection with obtaining a private letter ruling or influencing the drafting of a regulation or statute

**Example of When a Contingent Fee Is Not Permitted**

.05 A contingent fee is not permitted if a member prepared a client’s amended federal or state income tax return claiming a refund of taxes because a valid deduction was inadvertently omitted from the originally filed return. [Prior reference: paragraph .02 of ET section 302]

1.510.020 Receipt of Contingent Fee

.01 A contingent fee is considered to be received when the member has completed the related services and the fee is determined. [Prior reference: paragraphs .033–.034 of ET section 391]

1.510.030 Services Performed by a Member’s Spouse For a Contingent Fee

.01 A member’s spouse may provide services for a contingent fee to a client with respect to which the member performs a service listed in paragraph .01a of the “Contingent Fees Rule” [1.510.001] without causing the member to be in violation of the “Contingent Fees Rule” if

a. the activities of the member’s spouse are separate from the member’s practice and

b. the member is not significantly involved in the spouse’s activities.

.02 In all such situations, the members should consider the “Conflicts of Interest” interpretation [1.110.010] of the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] to determine the appropriate action. [Prior reference: paragraphs .037–.038 of ET section 391]

[See Revision History Table.]

1.510.040 Contingent Fee Arrangements With an Investment Advisory Services Nonattest Client That Is Related to a Client

.01 A member or member’s firm may provide investment advisory services for a contingent fee to

a. owners, officers, or employees of a client with respect to which the member performs a service listed in paragraph .01a of the “Contingent Fees Rule” [1.510.001].

b. a nonattest client employee benefit plan that is sponsored by an attest client with respect to which the member performs a service listed in paragraph .01a of the “Contingent Fees Rule.”
.02 The member should also consider the “Conflicts of Interest” interpretation [1.110.010] and the “Confidential Client Information Rule” [1.700.001] to determine the appropriate action(s). [Prior reference: paragraphs .049–.050 of ET section 391]

[See Revision History Table.]

1.510.050 Investment Advisory Services

.01 A member or member’s firm may provide investment advisory services for a fee based on a percentage of the investment portfolio to a client with respect to which the member performs a service listed in paragraph .01a of the “Contingent Fees Rule” [1.510.001] without violating that rule if all of the following safeguards are met:

a. The fee is determined based on a specified percentage of the attest client’s investment portfolio.

b. The dollar amount of the portfolio on which the fee is based is determined at the beginning of each quarter (or longer period of time as may be agreed upon) and is adjusted only for the attest client’s additions or withdrawals during the period.

c. The fee arrangement is not renewed with the attest client more frequently than on a quarterly basis. [Prior reference: paragraphs .047–.048 of ET section 391]

.02 When performing such services, the member should also consider the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001], especially the interpretations of the “Nonattest Services” subtopic [1.295] under the “Independence Rule.”

[See Revision History Table.]

1.520 Commissions and Referral Fees

1.520.001 Commissions and Referral Fees Rule

.01 Prohibited commissions. A member in public practice shall not for a commission recommend or refer to a client any product or service, or for a commission recommend or refer any product or service to be supplied by a client, or receive a commission, when the member or member’s firm also performs for that client

a. an audit or review of a financial statement; or

b. a compilation of a financial statement when the member expects, or reasonably might expect, that a third party will use the financial statement and the member’s compilation report does not disclose a lack of independence; or

c. an examination of prospective financial information.

.02 This prohibition applies during the period in which the member is engaged to perform any of the services listed above and the period covered by any historical financial statements involved in such listed services.

.03 Disclosure of permitted commissions. A member in public practice who is not prohibited by this rule from performing services for or receiving a commission and who is paid or expects to be paid a commission shall disclose that fact to any person or entity to whom the member recommends or refers a product or service to which the commission relates.

.04 Referral fees. Any member who accepts a referral fee for recommending or referring any service of a CPA to any person or entity or who pays a referral fee to obtain a client shall disclose such acceptance or payment to the client. [Prior reference: paragraph .01 of ET section 503]

Interpretations Under the Commission and Referral Fees Rule

1.520.005 Application of the Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice and Ethical Conflicts

.01 In the absence of an interpretation of the “Commissions and Referral Fees Rule” [1.520.001] that addresses a particular relationship or circumstance, a member should apply the “Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice” [1.000.010].

.02 A member would be considered in violation of the “Commissions and Referral Fees Rule” [1.520.001] if the member cannot demonstrate that safeguards were applied that eliminated or reduced significant threats to an acceptable level.

.03 A member should consider the guidance in “Ethical Conflicts” [1.000.020] when addressing ethical conflicts that may arise when the member encounters obstacles to following an appropriate course of action. Such obstacles may be due to internal or external pressures or to conflicts in applying relevant professional and legal standards, or both. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.04 Paragraphs .01 and .02 are effective December 15, 2015, and early implementation is allowed provided the member has implemented the revised code. Paragraph .03 is effective December 15, 2014.

1.520.020 Receipt of Commission

.01 A commission is considered to be received when the performance of the related services is complete and the fee has been determined. For example, if in one year a member sells a life insurance policy to a client, and the member’s commission payments are determined to be a fixed percentage of future years’ renewal premiums, the commission is deemed to be received in the year that the policy is sold. [Prior reference: paragraphs .367–.368 of ET section 591]

1.520.030 Services Performed by a Member’s Spouse For a Commission

.01 A member’s spouse may receive a commission for referring products or services to or from a client with respect to which the member performs a service listed in paragraph .01 of the “Commissions and Referral Fees Rule” [1.520.001] without causing the member to be in violation of the “Commissions and Referral Fees Rule” if both

a. the activities of the member’s spouse are separate from the member’s practice and

b. the member is not significantly involved in the spouse’s activities.

.02 In such situations, members should consider the “Conflicts of Interest” interpretation [1.110.010] of the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] to determine the appropriate action. [Prior reference: paragraphs .373–.374 of ET section 591]

[See Revision History Table.]

1.520.040 Referral of Products of Others

.01 Paragraph .04 of the “Application of the AICPA Code” [0.200.020] section of the preface provides that a member shall not permit others to perform acts on the member’s behalf that, if carried out by the member, would place the member in violation of the rules. Therefore, the member would be held responsible for the actions of third parties, such as distributors or agents, that act on the member’s behalf.

.02 For example, if the member or member’s firm performs for a client a service listed in paragraph .01 of the “Commissions and Referral Fees Rule” [1.520.001], the member may not recommend or refer to that client any product or services for a commission that will be paid through a distributor or an agent or receive a
commission for the recommendation or referral. This prohibition applies during the period in which the member is engaged to perform any of the services listed in paragraph .01 of the rule and during the period covered by any historical financial statements in such services.

.03 In addition, if a member receives a commission for referring a third party’s product or service to a client with respect to which the member does not perform a service listed in paragraph .01 of the “Commissions and Referral Fees Rule” [1.520.001] through a distributor or an agent and receives a commission from the third party, the member should disclose the commission, as discussed in paragraph .03 of the “Commissions and Referral Fees Rule.” However, any subsequent performance of a service listed in paragraph .01 of that rule during a period in which the commission was received would be considered to violate the rule. [Prior reference: paragraphs .375–.376 of ET section 591]


[See Revision History Table.]

1.520.050 Commission Arrangements With an Investment Advisory Services Nonattest Client That Is Related to a Client

.01 A member or member’s firm may receive a commission for referring a nonclient or nonattest client’s products or services to the following:

   a. Owners, officers, or employees of a client with respect to which the member performs a service listed in paragraph .01 of the “Commissions and Referral Fees Rule” [1.520.001]

   b. A nonattest client employee benefit plan that is sponsored by a client with respect to which the member performs a service listed in paragraph .01 of the “Commissions and Referral Fees Rule”

.02 In such instances, the member should disclose the commission arrangement to the client’s owners, officers, or employees or the employee benefit plan. The member’s failure to disclose the commission would be in violation of the “Commissions and Referral Fees Rule” [1.520.001].

.03 When making the disclosure, members should also consider the applicability of the “Conflicts of Interest” interpretation [1.110.010] of the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] and the member’s professional responsibilities under the “Confidential Client Information Rule” [1.700.001] to determine the appropriate action(s). [Prior reference: paragraphs .383–.384 of ET section 591]


[See Revision History Table.]

1.520.060 Sale of Products to Clients

.01 If a member purchases a product, taking title to the product and assuming all the associated risks of ownership, any profit the member receives on reselling it to a client would not constitute a commission. [Prior reference: paragraphs .369–.370 of ET section 591]

1.520.070 Billing for a Subcontractor’s Services

.01 If, in providing professional services to a client, a member subcontracts the services of another person or entity, any mark-up of the cost of the subcontracted services would not constitute a commission.
Refer to the following for additional guidance:

- “Use of a Third-Party Service Provider” interpretation [1.150.040] of the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001]
- “Fees” subtopic [1.230] under the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001]
- “Use of a Third-Party Service Provider” interpretation [1.300.040] of the “General Standards Rule” [1.300.001]

Effective Date

The revisions to this interpretation are effective December 15, 2014.

1.520.080 Disclosure of Commissions and Referral Fees

The member should make the disclosures required by paragraphs .03 and .04 of the “Commissions and Referral Fees Rule” [1.520.001] in writing.

Effective Date

Effective for commission or a referral fee arrangements entered into on or after January 31, 2017.


1.600 Advertising and Other Forms of Solicitation

1.600.001 Advertising and Other Forms of Solicitation Rule

A member in public practice shall not seek to obtain clients by advertising or other forms of solicitation in a manner that is false, misleading, or deceptive. Solicitation by the use of coercion, over-reaching, or harassing conduct is prohibited. [Prior reference: paragraph .01 of ET section 502]

Interpretations Under the Advertising and Other Forms of Solicitation Rule

1.600.005 Application of the Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice and Ethical Conflicts

In the absence of an interpretation of the “Advertising and Other Forms of Solicitation Rule” [1.600.001] that addresses a particular relationship or circumstance, a member should apply the “Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice” [1.000.010].

A member would be considered in violation of the “Advertising and Other Forms of Solicitation Rule” [1.600.001] if the member cannot demonstrate that safeguards were applied that eliminated or reduced significant threats to an acceptable level.

A member should consider the guidance in “Ethical Conflicts” [1.000.020] when addressing ethical conflicts that may arise when the member encounters obstacles to following an appropriate course of action. Such obstacles may be due to internal or external pressures or to conflicts in applying relevant professional and legal standards, or both. [No prior reference: new content]
Effective Date

.04 Paragraphs .01 and .02 are effective December 15, 2015, and early implementation is allowed provided the member has implemented the revised code. Paragraph .03 is effective December 15, 2014.

1.600.010 False, Misleading, or Deceptive Acts in Advertising or Solicitations

.01 A member would be in violation of the “Advertising and Other Forms of Solicitation Rule” [1.600.001] if the member’s promotional efforts are false, misleading, or deceptive. If a member is asked to perform professional services for a client or customer of a third party, the member should determine that the third party’s promotional efforts comply with the “Advertising and Other Forms of Solicitation Rule.” Such action is required because the member will receive the benefits of such efforts by third parties, and members must not do through others what they are prohibited from doing themselves. [Prior reference: paragraph .06 of ET section 502]

.02 Promotional efforts would be considered false, misleading, or deceptive if they

a. create false or unjustified expectations of favorable results.

b. imply the ability to influence any court, tribunal, regulatory agency, or similar body or official.

c. contain a representation that the member will perform specific professional services in current or future periods for a stated fee, estimated fee, or fee range when it was likely at the time of the representation that such fees would be substantially increased and the member failed to advise the prospective client of that likelihood.

d. contain any other representations that would be likely to cause a reasonable person to misunderstand or be deceived. [Prior reference: paragraph .03 of ET section 502]

1.600.030 Use of AICPA-Awarded Designation

.01 A member who holds an AICPA-awarded designation, such as the Personal Financial Specialist (PFS) designation, may use the designation after the member’s name.

.02 A member’s firm may use an AICPA-awarded designation, such as the PFS designation, on firm letterhead and in marketing materials if all the firm’s partners hold the AICPA-awarded designation. [Prior reference: paragraphs .365–.366 of ET section 591]

Effective Date

.03 The revisions to this interpretation are effective December 15, 2014.

1.600.100 Use of the CPA Credential

.01 A member should refer to applicable state accountancy laws and board of accountancy rules and regulations for guidance regarding the use of the CPA credential. A member who fails to follow the accountancy laws, rules, and regulations on use of the CPA credential in any of the jurisdictions in which the CPA practices would be considered to have used the CPA credential in a manner that is false, misleading, or deceptive and in violation of the “Advertising and Other Forms of Solicitation Rule” [1.600.001]. [Prior reference .07 section 502.]

1.700 Confidential Information

1.700.001 Confidential Client Information Rule

.01 A member in public practice shall not disclose any confidential client information without the specific consent of the client.
This rule shall not be construed (1) to relieve a member of his or her professional obligations of the “Compliance With Standards Rule” [1.310.001] or the “Accounting Principles Rule” [1.320.001], (2) to affect in any way the member’s obligation to comply with a validly issued and enforceable subpoena or summons, or to prohibit a member’s compliance with applicable laws and government regulations, (3) to prohibit review of a member’s professional practice under AICPA or state CPA society or Board of Accountancy authorization, or (4) to preclude a member from initiating a complaint with, or responding to any inquiry made by, the professional ethics division or trial board of the Institute or a duly constituted investigative or disciplinary body of a state CPA society or Board of Accountancy. Members of any of the bodies identified in (4) above and members involved with professional practice reviews identified in (3) above shall not use to their own advantage or disclose any member’s confidential client information that comes to their attention in carrying out those activities. This prohibition shall not restrict members’ exchange of information in connection with the investigative or disciplinary proceedings described in (4) above or the professional practice reviews described in (3) above. [Prior reference: paragraph .01 of ET section 301]

Interpretations Under the Confidential Client Information Rule

1.700.005 Application of the Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice and Ethical Conflicts

.01 In the absence of an interpretation of the “Confidential Client Information Rule” [1.700.001] that addresses a particular relationship or circumstance, a member should apply the “Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice” [1.000.010].

.02 A member would be considered in violation of the “Confidential Client Information Rule” [1.700.001] if the member cannot demonstrate that safeguards were applied that eliminated or reduced significant threats to an acceptable level.

.03 A member should consider the guidance in “Ethical Conflicts” [1.000.020] when addressing ethical conflicts that may arise when the member encounters obstacles to following an appropriate course of action. Such obstacles may be due to internal or external pressures or to conflicts in applying relevant professional and legal standards, or both. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.04 Paragraphs .01 and .02 are effective December 15, 2015, and early implementation is allowed provided the member has implemented the revised code. Paragraph .03 is effective December 15, 2014.

1.700.010 Client Competitors

.01 When a member provides professional services to clients that are competitors, threats to compliance with the “Confidential Client Information Rule” [1.700.001] may exist because the member may have access to confidential client information, such as sales, purchases, and gross profit percentages of the respective competitors.

.02 To reduce the threat of disclosing confidential client information to a competitor, the member should emphasize to all relevant parties, including employees of the firm and affected clients, that the “Confidential Client Information Rule” [1.700.001] prohibits members from revealing to others any confidential client information obtained in their professional capacity. [Prior reference: paragraphs .011–.012 of ET section 391]

1.700.020 Disclosing Information From Previous Engagements

.01 When a member evaluates whether to accept a new client engagement, the member should consider whether knowledge and experience that the member or member’s firm will share while providing the professional services to the prospective client would be confidential client information. If such information would
be confidential client information, and the circumstances are such that the prospective client would be able to identify the client or clients that are the source of the information, the engagement should not be accepted unless the member obtains the original client’s specific consent to disclose the information. [Prior reference: paragraphs .029–.030 of ET section 391]

.02 When a member withdraws from an engagement due to, for example, discovery of irregularities in a client’s tax return, if contacted by the successor, the member should suggest that the successor ask the client to permit the member to discuss all matters freely with the successor. The successor is then on notice of some conflict.

.03 The “Confidential Client Information Rule” [1.700.001] is not intended to help an unscrupulous client cover up illegal acts or otherwise hide information by changing CPAs. Due to the possibility of legal implications in such matters, the member should seek legal advice on the member’s status and obligations in the matter. [Prior reference: paragraphs .005–.006 of ET section 391]

1.700.030 Disclosing Information to Clients

.01 When a member is engaged by either spouse to prepare a married couple’s joint tax return, the two spouses are considered to be one client, even if the member deals exclusively with one spouse. Accordingly, if the married couple is undergoing a divorce and one spouse directs the member to withhold joint tax information from the other spouse, the member may provide the information to both spouses, in compliance with the “Confidential Client Information Rule” [1.700.001], because both are the member’s client. The member should consider reviewing

a. the legal implications of such disclosure with an attorney and

b. responsibilities under any tax performance standards, such as Section 10.29 of IRS Circular 230. [Prior reference: paragraphs .031–.032 of ET section 391]

.02 When a person or entity engages a member to perform professional services (engaging entity) for the benefit of another person or entity (beneficiary), the engaging entity and the beneficiary are considered two separate clients. Accordingly, the member should not disclose confidential client information of either client to the other without consent of the client whose confidential information is to be disclosed. For example, if a company engages a member to perform personal tax services for the benefit of its executives, the member’s disclosure of the executives’ confidential client information to the company without the consent of the applicable executive would be a violation of the “Confidential Client Information Rule” [1.700.001]. [Prior reference: paragraphs .041–.042 of ET section 391]

[See Revision History Table.]

1.700.040 Disclosing Information to a Third-Party Service Provider

.01 When a member uses a third-party service provider to assist the member in providing professional services, threats to compliance with the “Confidential Client Information Rule” [1.700.001] may exist.

.02 Clients may not expect the member to use a third-party service provider to assist the member in providing the professional services. Therefore, before disclosing confidential client information to a third-party service provider, the member should do one of the following:

a. Enter into a contractual agreement with the third-party service provider to maintain the confidentiality of the information and provide reasonable assurance that the third-party service provider has appropriate procedures in place to prevent the unauthorized release of confidential information to others. The nature and extent of procedures necessary to obtain reasonable assurance depends on the facts and circumstances, including the extent of publicly available information on the third-party service provider’s controls and procedures to safeguard confidential client information.
b. Obtain specific consent from the client before disclosing confidential client information to the third-party service provider.


A nonauthoritative basis-for-conclusions document that summarizes considerations that were deemed significant in the development of this interpretation is available at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadeddocuments/basisforconclusionsoutsourcing.pdf.

In addition, nonauthoritative sample client disclosure language that could be used to fulfill the requirement discussed in this interpretation is also available at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadeddocuments/sample_disclosure_notification.pdf.

1.700.050 Disclosing Client Information in Connection With a Review or Acquisition of the Member’s Practice

For purposes of the “Confidential Client Information Rule” [1.700.001], a review of a member’s professional practice includes a review performed in conjunction with a prospective purchase, sale, or merger of all or part of a member’s practice. Such reviews may threaten a member’s compliance with the “Confidential Client Information Rule.” To reduce the threat to an acceptable level, a member must take appropriate precautions (for example, through a written confidentiality agreement with the prospective purchaser) to help ensure that the prospective purchaser does not disclose any confidential client information obtained in the course of the review.

Members who perform such reviews should not use to their advantage or disclose any confidential client information that comes to their attention during the review. [Prior reference: paragraph .04 of ET section 301]

Members who obtain client files as the result of acquiring all or part of another member’s professional practice should not disclose any confidential client information contained in such files. Members should refer to the “Transfer of Files and Return of Client Records in Sale, Transfer Discontinuance or Acquisition of a Practice” interpretation under the “ Acts Discreditable Rule” [1.400.205] for guidance related to client files obtained through acquiring a practice.

[See Revision History Table.]

1.700.060 Disclosure of Client Information to Third Parties

When a member receives a request from a third party (for example, a trade association, member of academia, or surveying or benchmarking organization) to disclose client information or intends to use such information for the member’s own purposes (for example, publication of benchmarking data or studies) in a manner that may result in the client’s information being disclosed to others without the client being specifically identified, threats to compliance with the “Confidential Client Information Rule” [1.700.001] may exist.

If the information is considered to be confidential client information, the member would be in violation of the “Confidential Client Information Rule” [1.700.001] if the member discloses or uses the information unless the member has the client’s specific consent, preferably in writing, for the disclosure or use of such information. The consent should specify the nature of the information that may be disclosed, the type of third party to whom it may be disclosed, and its intended use.
If the information is not considered to be confidential client information, the disclosure or use of the information is not subject to the “Confidential Client Information Rule” [1.700.001]. However, the member should be cautious in the disclosure or use of the information so as not to disclose client information that may go beyond what is available to the public or that the client has agreed may be disclosed.

A member is not prohibited from marketing his or her services or advising a third party, such as a current or prospective client, of information based on his or her expertise or knowledge obtained from prior experiences with clients (for example, the nature of services provided to other clients or common practices within a client’s industry). However, if the information may be identifiable to one or more clients, specific consent, preferably in writing, is required from such client(s). Prior to disclosing confidential client information to a third party, the member should consider whether a contractual agreement with the third party to maintain the confidentiality or limit the use of the information is necessary.

In addition, the member should consider whether federal, state, or local statutes, rules, or regulations concerning the confidentiality of client information may be more restrictive than the requirements in this interpretation.


A nonauthoritative table providing examples of client information that is available to the public, client information not available to the public, and other information in the member’s possession is available at https://us.aicpa.org/interestareas/professionalethics/resources/tools/downloadeddocuments/categories-of-information.pdf.

1.700.070 Disclosing Client Information During Litigation

The “Confidential Client Information Rule” [1.700.001] is not intended to prohibit a member from disclosing information necessary to initiate, pursue, or defend the member in an actual or a threatened lawsuit or alternative dispute resolution proceeding. Accordingly, releasing confidential client information to the member’s liability insurance carrier solely to assist in the defense against an actual or a potential claim against the member would not violate the “Confidential Client Information Rule.” [Prior reference: paragraphs .039–.040 and .045–.046 of ET section 391]

1.700.080 Disclosing Client Information in Director Positions

When a member serves as a director of an organization, such as a bank or an insurance company, the member’s fiduciary responsibilities to the organization may create threats to compliance with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] and the “Confidential Client Information Rule” [1.700.001]. For example, the member’s fiduciary duty to the organization may conflict with the member’s obligations pursuant to the “Confidential Client Information Rule” (for example, failure to disclose information may constitute a breach of the director’s fiduciary responsibilities) when the member’s clients are customers of the organization.

A member’s general knowledge and experience may be very helpful to an organization in formulating a policy and making business decisions. Nevertheless, if the member’s clients are likely to engage in significant transactions with the organization, it would be more appropriate for the member to serve as a consultant to the board. Under such an arrangement, the member could limit activities to those that do not threaten the member’s compliance with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001] and the “Confidential Client Information Rule” [1.700.001]. If, however, the member serves as a board member of the organization, the member should evaluate the significance of any threats and apply safeguards, when necessary, to eliminate or reduce the threats to an acceptable level.

See the “Director Positions” interpretation [1.110.020] of the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [1.100.001]. [Prior reference: paragraphs .035–.036 of ET section 391]
.04 The revisions to this interpretation are effective December 15, 2014.

1.700.090 Disclosing Client Names

.01 The member’s disclosure of a client’s name would not violate the “Confidential Client Information Rule” [1.700.001] if disclosure of the client’s name does not constitute the release of confidential client information. For example, if a member’s practice is limited to bankruptcy matters, disclosure of the client’s name could suggest that the client may be experiencing financial difficulties, which may be confidential client information. [Prior reference: paragraphs .013–.014 of ET section 391]

1.700.100 Disclosing Confidential Client Information as a Result of a Subpoena or Summons

.01 The member’s disclosure of confidential client information in compliance with a validly issued and enforceable subpoena or summons would not violate the “Confidential Client Information Rule” [1.700.001].

.02 When complying with such subpoena or summons, the member is not required to notify the client that its records have been subpoenaed or that a summons related to the client’s records has been issued. The member may also wish to consult with legal counsel to determine the validity and enforceability of the subpoena or summons and the specific client information required to be provided. The member may also wish to consult with his or her state board of accountancy. [No prior reference: New content from informal policy position]

Effective Date

.03 Effective December 15, 2014.

1.700.110 Disclosing Client Information in Connection With a Quality Review

.01 For purposes of the “Confidential Client Information Rule” [1.700.001], a review of a member’s professional practice includes a quality review of a member’s tax practice (for example, a voluntary tax practice review) performed under the monitoring function of the member’s tax practice quality control policies and procedures. When a member uses a third party to perform such reviews of the member’s tax practice, threats to compliance with the “Confidential Client Information Rule” may exist.

.02 To reduce the threat to an acceptable level, the member should, at a minimum, be satisfied that the member complies with the requirements of Treasury Regulation 301.7216-2(p) and any applicable state or local regulations related to disclosures of any federal, state, or local tax return information during such reviews. In addition, the member should be satisfied that the third-party reviewer is aware of and subject to the requirements of Treasury Regulation 301.7216-2(p) and any applicable state or local regulations. If the member determines that threats have not been reduced to an acceptable level, the member should apply additional safeguards to reduce the threats to an acceptable level (for example, enter into a written confidentiality agreement with the reviewer or de-identify tax return information provided to the reviewer).

.03 Members who perform such reviews should not use to their advantage or disclose any confidential client information that comes to their attention during the review. Members should refer to Treasury Regulation 301.7216-2(p) and any applicable state or local regulations for further guidance related to tax return information obtained during such reviews.

Effective Date

.04 This interpretation is effective December 31, 2018.

[See Revision History Table.]

1.800 Form of Organization and Name
1.800.001 Form of Organization and Name Rule

.01 A member may practice public accounting only in a form of organization permitted by law or regulation whose characteristics conform to resolutions of Council.

.02 A member shall not practice public accounting under a firm name that is misleading.

.03 Names of one or more past owners may be included in the firm name of a successor organization.

.04 A firm may not designate itself as “Members of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants” unless all its CPA owners are members of the AICPA.

.05 See appendix B, “Council Resolution Concerning Form of Organization and Name.” [Prior reference: paragraph .01 of ET section 505]

Interpretations Under the Form of Organization and Name Rule

1.800.005 Application of the Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice and Ethical Conflicts

.01 In the absence of an interpretation of the “Form of Organization and Name Rule” [1.800.001] that addresses a particular relationship or circumstance, a member should apply the “Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice” [1.000.010].

.02 A member would be considered in violation of the “Form of Organization and Name Rule” [1.800.001] if the member cannot demonstrate the application of safeguards that eliminated or reduced significant threats to an acceptable level.

.03 A member should consider the guidance in “Ethical Conflicts” [1.000.020] when addressing ethical conflicts that may arise when the member encounters obstacles to following an appropriate course of action. Such obstacles may be due to internal or external pressures or to conflicts in applying relevant professional and legal standards, or both. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.04 Paragraphs .01 and .02 are effective December 15, 2015 and early implementation is allowed provided the member has implemented the revised code. Paragraph .03 is effective December 15, 2014.

1.810 Form of Organization and Related Practice Issues

1.810.010 Ownership of a Separate Business

.01 A member may own an interest in a separate business that performs for clients accounting, tax, personal financial planning, or litigation support services or other services for which standards are promulgated by bodies designated by Council.

.02 If the member, either individually or collectively with the member’s firm or others in the firm, controls the separate business, then the separate business, its owners (including the member), and its professional employees must comply with the code. For example, if one or more members individually or collectively control the separate business, the member(s) and others associated with the separate business are subject to the “Commissions and Referral Fees Rule” [1.520.001] and its interpretations. With respect to an attest client, the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] and its interpretations would apply to the activities of the separate business, its owners, and its professional employees.

.03 When the member, individually or collectively with the member’s firm or others in the firm, does not control the separate business, the provisions of the code would apply to the member’s actions but not
Part 1 — Members in Public Practice

to the separate business, its other (nonmember) owners, and its professional employees. For example, the separate business could enter into a contingent fee arrangement with the member’s attest client or accept commissions for the referral of products or services to the member’s attest client. [Prior reference: paragraph .03 of ET section 505]

.04 When the owners of the separate business are non-CPAs, to prevent any misunderstanding or misrepresentation, the CPA member should advise clients and other interested parties that the CPA member is an owner in two separate businesses: one made up of non-CPAs (except for the CPA member) and another that is a CPA firm. [Prior reference: paragraphs .275–.276 of ET section 591]

.05 See the “Network and Network Firms” interpretation [1.220.010] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] and the definitions of networks and network firms for guidance applicable to these entities.

1.810.020 Partner Designation

.01 Only members of a firm who are legally partners should use the designation partner. Members who are not parties to the firm’s partnership agreement should not hold themselves out in any manner that might lead clients or the public to believe that they are partners. For example, using the designation “nonproprietary partner” to describe a high-ranking professional employee would be misleading and in violation of the “Form of Organization and Name Rule” [1.800.001] even if the professional employee was a partner in one of the predecessor firms that merged into the firm. [Prior reference: paragraphs .273–.274 of ET section 591]

1.810.030 A Member’s Responsibility for Nonmember Practitioners

.01 A member who becomes an employee of a firm made up of one or more nonmember practitioners must still comply with the code. If the member becomes an owner in the firm, the member will be responsible for firm’s professional employees, including the nonmember practitioners.

.02 Similarly, if a member forms a partnership with a nonmember, the member is ethically responsible for all the activities of the partnership. If the nonmember partner violates the code, the member would be held accountable for that partner’s actions.

.03 See paragraph .04 of the “Application of the AICPA Code” [0.200.020] section of the preface and appendix B. [Prior reference: paragraphs .005–.006 and .281–.282 of ET section 591]

1.810.040 Attest Engagement Performed With a Former Partner

.01 Unless there are laws, rules or regulations that are applicable to the member that conclude otherwise, two former partners may continue to jointly perform an attest engagement even if one of them is not a CPA. However, to be clear that a partnership no longer exists and to assure the attest client and others that both individuals performed the attest engagement, they should present their report on plain paper (that is, paper with no letterhead) that is signed in the following manner:

John Doe, Certified Public Accountant
Richard Roe, Accountant

[Prior reference: paragraphs .271–.272 of ET section 591]

Effective Date

.02 The revisions to this interpretation are effective December 15, 2014.

1.810.050 Alternative Practice Structures

.01 The “Form of Organization and Name Rule” [1.800.001] states, “A member may practice public accounting only in a form of organization permitted by law or regulation whose characteristics conform
to resolutions of Council.” The Council resolution (appendix B) requires, among other things, that CPAs own a majority of the financial interests in a firm engaged to provide attest services (as defined therein) to the public. This interpretation explains the application of this rule to an alternative practice structure (APS) in which (a) the majority of the financial interests in the attest firm is owned by CPAs and (b) all or substantially all of the revenues are paid to another entity in return for services and the lease of employees, equipment, and office space.

.02 To protect the public interest, the overriding focus of the resolution is that CPAs remain responsible, financially and otherwise, for a firm’s attest work. In addition to the provisions of the resolution, other requirements of the code and bylaws ensure responsibility for

a. compliance with all aspects of applicable law or regulation,

b. enrollment in an AICPA-approved practice monitoring program,

c. compliance with the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001], and

d. compliance with applicable standards promulgated by Council-designated bodies (“Compliance With Standards Rule” [1.310.001]) and all other provisions of the code, including “Structure and Application of the AICPA Code” [0.200].

.03 Given all the previously mentioned safeguards that protect the public interest, if the CPAs who own the attest firm remain financially responsible, under applicable law or regulation, for the firm’s attest work, the member is considered to be in compliance with the financial interests provision of the resolution. [Prior reference: paragraph .04 of ET section 505]

1.820 Firm Name

1.820.010 Use of a Retired Partner’s Name

.01 The “Form of Organization and Name Rule” [1.800.001] permits the use of the name(s) of former partner(s) in a firm’s name. For example, if two firms merge, the newly formed firm may use in its firm name the name of retired or other partners in either or both of the merged firms without violating the “Form of Organization and Name Rule.” [Prior reference: paragraphs .289–.290 of ET section 591]

1.820.020 A Practice With Non-CPA Partners

.01 Unless there are laws, rules, or regulations that are applicable to the member that conclude otherwise, a CPA member who is in a partnership with non-CPAs may sign reports in the firm’s name and also affix the designation, “Certified Public Accountant,” to the member’s signature if it is clear that the partnership itself is not being held out as entirely comprising CPAs. [Prior reference: paragraphs .379–.380 of ET section 591]

1.820.030 Misleading Firm Names

.01 The “Form of Organization and Name Rule” [1.800.001] prohibits a member from practicing public accounting under a firm name that is misleading. If the firm name contains any representation that would be likely to cause a reasonable person to misunderstand, or be confused about, what the legal form of the firm is or who the owners or members of the firm are, the firm name would be misleading and the member would be in violation of the “Form of Organization and Name Rule.” For example, the member should not refer to a type of organization or an abbreviation thereof that does not accurately reflect the form under which the firm is organized.

.02 In addition, the member should consider the rules and regulations of his or her state board(s) of accountancy concerning misleading firm names that may be more restrictive than the requirements in this interpretation. [Prior reference: paragraph .05 of ET section 505]
1.820.040 Use of a Common Brand Name in Firm Name

.01 *Firms* within a *network* sometimes share the use of a common brand or share common initials as part of the *firm* name. The sharing of a common brand name or common initials of a *network* as part of the *member’s firm* name would not be considered misleading, provided the *firm* is a *network firm*.

.02 The sharing of a common brand name or common initials of a *network* as the entire name of the *member’s firm* would not be considered misleading, if the *firm* is a *network firm* and shares one or more of the following characteristics with other *firms* in the *network*:

a. Common *control* among the firms through ownership, management, or other means

b. Profits or costs, excluding costs of operating the *network*; costs of developing audit methodologies, manuals, and training courses; and other costs that are immaterial to the *firm*

c. Common business strategy that involves ongoing collaboration amongst the *firms* whereby the *firms* are responsible for implementing the *network’s* strategy and are held accountable for performance pursuant to that strategy

d. Significant part of professional resources

e. Common quality control policies and procedures that *firms* are required to implement and that are monitored by the *network*

.03 Refer to the “*Network and Network Firms*” interpretation [1.220.010] of the “Independence Rule” [1.200.001] for additional guidance. [Prior reference: paragraph .06 of ET section 505]
Part 2

Members in Business

2.000 Introduction

.01 Part 2 of the Code of Professional Conduct (the code) applies to members in business. Accordingly, when the term member is used in part 2 of the code, the requirements apply only to members in business. When a member in business is also a member in public practice (for example, a member has a part-time tax practice), the member should also consult part 1 of the code, which applies to members in public practice. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.02 Effective December 15, 2014.

2.000.010 Conceptual Framework for Members in Business

Introduction

.01 Members may encounter various relationships or circumstances that create threats to the member's compliance with the rules. The rules and interpretations seek to address many situations; however, they cannot address all relationships or circumstances that may arise. Thus, in the absence of an interpretation that addresses a particular relationship or circumstance, a member should evaluate whether that relationship or circumstance would lead a reasonable and informed third party who is aware of the relevant information to conclude that there is a threat to the member's compliance with the rules that is not at an acceptable level. When making that evaluation, the member should apply the conceptual framework approach as outlined in this interpretation.

.02 The code specifies that in some circumstances, no safeguards can reduce a threat to an acceptable level. For example, the code specifies that a member may not subordinate the member's professional judgment to others without violating the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [2.100.001]. A member may not use the conceptual framework to overcome this or any other prohibition or requirement in the code.

Definitions Used in Applying the Conceptual Framework

.03 Acceptable level. A level at which a reasonable and informed third party who is aware of the relevant information would be expected to conclude that a member's compliance with the rules is not compromised.

.04 Safeguards. Actions or other measures that may eliminate a threat or reduce a threat to an acceptable level.

.05 Threat(s). Relationships or circumstances that could compromise a member's compliance with the rules.

Conceptual Framework Approach

.06 Under the conceptual framework approach, members should identify threats to compliance with the rules and evaluate the significance of those threats. Members should evaluate identified threats both individually and in the aggregate because threats can have a cumulative effect on a member's compliance with the rules. Members should perform three main steps in applying the conceptual framework approach:

   a. Identify threats. The relationships or circumstances that a member encounters in various engagements and work assignments or positions will often create different threats to complying with the rules. When a member encounters a relationship or circumstance that is not specifically addressed by a rule or an interpretation, under this approach, the member should determine whether the relationship or circumstance creates one or more threats, such as those identified in
that follow. The existence of a threat does not mean that the member is in violation of the rules; however, the member should evaluate the significance of the threat.

b. Evaluate the significance of a threat. In evaluating the significance of an identified threat, the member should determine whether a threat is at an acceptable level. A threat is at an acceptable level when a reasonable and informed third party who is aware of the relevant information would be expected to conclude that the threat would not compromise the member’s compliance with the rules. Members should consider both qualitative and quantitative factors when evaluating the significance of a threat, including the extent to which existing safeguards already reduce the threat to an acceptable level. If the member evaluates the threat and concludes that a reasonable and informed third party who is aware of the relevant information would be expected to conclude that the threat does not compromise a member’s compliance with the rules, the threat is at an acceptable level and the member is not required to evaluate the threat any further under this conceptual framework approach.

c. Identify and apply safeguards. If, in evaluating the significance of an identified threat, the member concludes that the threat is not at an acceptable level, the member should apply safeguards to eliminate the threat or reduce it to an acceptable level. The member should apply judgment in determining the nature of the safeguards to be applied because the effectiveness of safeguards will vary depending on the circumstances. When identifying appropriate safeguards to apply, one safeguard may eliminate or reduce multiple threats. In some cases, the member should apply multiple safeguards to eliminate or reduce one threat to an acceptable level. In other cases, an identified threat may be so significant that no safeguards will eliminate the threat or reduce it to an acceptable level, or the member will be unable to implement effective safeguards. Under such circumstances, providing the specific professional services would compromise the member’s compliance with the rules, and the member should determine whether to decline or discontinue the professional services or resign from the employing organization.

**Threats**

.07 Many threats fall into one or more of the following six broad categories: adverse interest, advocacy, familiarity, self-interest, self-review, and undue influence.

.08 Examples of threats associated with a specific relationship or circumstance are identified in the interpretations of the code. Paragraphs .09–.14 of this section define and provide examples, which are not all inclusive, of each of these threat categories.

.09 Adverse interest threat. The threat that a member will not act with objectivity because the member’s interests are opposed to the interests of the employing organization. Examples of adverse interest threats include the following:

a. A member has charged, or expressed an intention to charge, the employing organization with violations of law.

b. A member or the member’s immediate family or close relative has a financial or another relationship with a vendor, customer, competitor, or potential acquisition of the employing organization.

c. A member has sued or expressed an intention to sue the employing organization or its officers, directors, or employees.

.10 Advocacy threat. The threat that a member will promote an employing organization’s interests or position to the point that his or her objectivity is compromised. Examples of advocacy threats include the following:

a. Obtaining favorable financing or additional capital is dependent upon the information that the member includes in, or excludes from, a prospectus, an offering, a business plan, a financing application, or a regulatory filing.
Part 2 — Members in Business

b. The member gives or fails to give information that the member knows will unduly influence the conclusions reached by an external service provider or other third party.

.11 Familiarity threat. The threat that, due to a long or close relationship with a person or an employing organization, a member will become too sympathetic to their interests or too accepting of the person’s work or employing organization’s product or service. Examples of familiarity threats include the following:

a. A member uses an immediate family’s or a close relative’s company as a supplier to the employing organization.

b. A member may accept an individual’s work product with little or no review because the individual has been producing an acceptable work product for an extended period of time.

c. A member’s immediate family or close relative is employed as a member’s subordinate.

d. A member regularly accepts gifts or entertainment from a vendor or customer of the employing organization.

.12 Self-interest threat. The threat that a member could benefit, financially or otherwise, from an interest in, or relationship with, the employing organization or persons associated with the employing organization. Examples of self-interest threats include the following:

a. A member’s immediate family or close relative has a financial interest in the employing organization.

b. A member holds a financial interest (for example, shares or share options) in the employing organization, and the value of that financial interest is directly affected by the member’s decisions.

c. A member is eligible for a profit or other performance-related bonus, and the value of that bonus is directly affected by the member’s decisions.

.13 Self-review threat. The threat that a member will not appropriately evaluate the results of a previous judgment made or service performed or supervised by the member, or an individual in the employing organization and that the member will rely on that service in forming a judgment as part of another service. Examples of self-review threats include the following:

a. When performing an internal audit procedure, an internal auditor accepts work that he or she previously performed in a different position.

b. The member accepts the work previously performed by the member, alone or with others, that will be the basis for providing another professional service.

.14 Undue influence threat. The threat that a member will subordinate his or her judgment to that of an individual associated with the employing organization or any relevant third party due to that individual’s position, reputation or expertise, aggressive or dominant personality, or attempts to coerce or exercise excessive influence over the member. Examples of undue influence threats include the following:

a. A member is pressured to become associated with misleading information.

b. A member is pressured to deviate from a company policy.

c. A member is pressured to change a conclusion regarding an accounting or a tax position.

d. A member is pressured to hire an unqualified individual.

Safeguards

.15 Safeguards may partially or completely eliminate a threat or diminish the potential influence of a threat. The nature and extent of the safeguards applied will depend on many factors. To be effective, safeguards should eliminate the threat or reduce it to an acceptable level.
.16 Safeguards that may eliminate a threat or reduce it to an acceptable level fall into two broad categories:

a. Safeguards created by the profession, legislation, or regulation

b. Safeguards implemented by the employing organization

.17 The effectiveness of a safeguard depends on many factors, including those listed here:

a. The facts and circumstances specific to a particular situation

b. The proper identification of threats

c. Whether the safeguard is suitably designed to meet its objectives

d. The party(ies) who will be subject to the safeguard

e. How the safeguard is applied

f. The consistency with which the safeguard is applied

g. Who applies the safeguard

h. How the safeguard interacts with a safeguard from another category

i. Whether the employing organization is a public interest entity

.18 Examples of safeguards within each category are presented in the following paragraphs. Because these are only examples and are not intended to be all inclusive, it is possible that threats may be sufficiently mitigated through the application of other safeguards not specifically identified herein.

.19 The following are examples of safeguards created by the profession, legislation, or regulation:

a. Education and training requirements on ethics and professional responsibilities

b. Continuing education requirements on ethics

c. Professional standards and the threat of discipline

d. Legislation establishing prohibitions and requirements for entities and employees

e. Competency and experience requirements for professional licensure

f. Professional resources, such as hotlines, for consultation on ethical issues

.20 Examples of safeguards implemented by the employing organization are as follows:

a. A tone at the top emphasizing a commitment to fair financial reporting and compliance with applicable laws, rules, regulations, and corporate governance policies

b. Policies and procedures addressing ethical conduct and compliance with laws, rules, and regulations

c. Audit committee charter, including independent audit committee members

d. Internal policies and procedures requiring disclosure of identified interests or relationships among the employing organization, its directors or officers, and vendors, suppliers, or customers

e. Internal policies and procedures related to purchasing controls
Part 2 — Members in Business

f. Internal policies and procedures related to customer acceptance or credit limits

g. Dissemination of corporate ethical compliance policies and procedures, including whistle-blower hotlines, the reporting structure, dispute resolution, or other similar policies, to promote compliance with laws, rules, regulations, and other professional requirements

h. Human resource policies and procedures safeguarding against discrimination or harassment, such as those concerning a worker’s religion, sexual orientation, gender, or disability

i. Human resource policies and procedures stressing the hiring and retention of technically competent employees

j. Policies and procedures for implementing and monitoring ethical policies

k. Assigning sufficient staff with the necessary competencies to projects and other tasks

l. Policies segregating personal assets from company assets

m. Staff training on applicable laws, rules, and regulations

n. Regular monitoring of internal policies and procedures

o. A reporting structure whereby the internal auditor does not report to the financial reporting group

p. Policies and procedures that do not allow an internal auditor to monitor areas where the internal auditor has operational or functional responsibilities

q. Policies for promotion, rewards, and enforcement of a culture of high ethics and integrity

r. Use of third-party resources for consultation as needed on significant matters of professional judgment [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.21 Effective December 15, 2015. Early implementation is allowed provided the member has implemented the revised code.


2.000.020 Ethical Conflicts

.01 An ethical conflict arises when a member encounters one or both of the following:

   a. Obstacles to following an appropriate course of action due to internal or external pressures

   b. Conflicts in applying relevant professional and legal standards.

.02 Once an ethical conflict is encountered, a member may be required to take steps to best achieve compliance with the rules and law. In weighing alternative courses of action, the member should consider factors such as the following:

   a. Relevant facts and circumstances, including applicable rules, laws, or regulations

   b. Ethical issues involved
Part 2 — Members in Business

c. Established internal procedures

.03 The member should also be prepared to justify any departures that the member believes were appropriate in applying the relevant rules and law. If the member was unable to resolve the conflict in a way that permitted compliance with the applicable rules and law, the member may have to address the consequences of any violations.

.04 Before pursuing a course of action, the member should consider consulting with appropriate persons within the organization that employs the member.

.05 If a member decides not to consult with appropriate persons within the organization that employs the member, and the conflict remains unresolved after pursuing the selected course of action, the member should consider either consulting with other individuals for help in reaching a resolution or obtaining advice from an appropriate professional body or legal counsel. The member also should consider documenting the substance of the issue, the parties with whom the issue was discussed, details of any discussions held, and any decisions made concerning the issue.

.06 If the ethical conflict remains unresolved, the member will in all likelihood be in violation of one or more rules if he or she remains associated with the matter creating the conflict. Accordingly, the member should consider his or her continuing relationship with the specific assignment or employer. [No prior reference: new content]

.07 Refer to the “Responding to Noncompliance With Laws and Regulations” interpretation [2.180.010] of the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [2.100.001] for additional guidance.

Effective Date

.08 Effective December 15, 2014.

[See Revision History Table.]

2.100 Integrity and Objectivity

2.100.001 Integrity and Objectivity Rule

.01 In the performance of any professional service, a member shall maintain objectivity and integrity, shall be free of conflicts of interest, and shall not knowingly misrepresent facts or subordinate his or her judgment to others. [Prior reference: paragraph .01 of ET section 102]

Interpretations Under the Integrity and Objectivity Rule

2.100.005 Application of the Conceptual Framework for Members in Business and Ethical Conflicts

.01 In the absence of an interpretation of the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [2.100.001] that addresses a particular relationship or circumstance, a member should apply the “Conceptual Framework for Members in Business” [2.000.010].

.02 A member would be considered in violation of the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [2.100.001] if the member cannot demonstrate that safeguards were applied that eliminated or reduced significant threats to an acceptable level.

.03 A member should consider the guidance in “Ethical Conflicts” [2.000.020] when addressing ethical conflicts that may arise when the member encounters obstacles to following an appropriate course of action. Such obstacles may be due to internal or external pressures or to conflicts in applying relevant professional and legal standards, or both. [No prior reference: new content]
Effective Date

.04 Paragraphs .01 and .02 are effective December 15, 2015, and early implementation is allowed provided the member has implemented the revised code. Paragraph .03 is effective December 15, 2014.

2.110 Conflicts of Interest

2.110.010 Conflicts of Interest for Members in Business

.01 A member may be faced with a conflict of interest when undertaking a professional service. In determining whether a professional service, relationship, or matter would result in a conflict of interest, a member should use professional judgment, taking into account whether a reasonable and informed third party who is aware of the relevant information would conclude that a conflict of interest exists.

.02 A conflict of interest creates adverse interest and self-interest threats to the member’s compliance with the "Integrity and Objectivity Rule" [2.100.001]. For example, threats may be created when

   a. a member undertakes a professional service related to a particular matter involving two or more parties whose interests with respect to that matter are in conflict, or

   b. the interests of a member with respect to a particular matter and the interests of a party for whom the member undertakes a professional service related to that matter are in conflict.

.03 A party may include an employing organization, a vendor, a customer, a lender, a shareholder, or other party.

.04 The following are examples of situations in which conflicts of interest may arise:

   a. Serving in a management or governance position for two employing organizations and acquiring confidential information from one employing organization that could be used by the member to the advantage or disadvantage of the other employing organization

   b. Undertaking a professional service for each of two parties in a partnership employing the member to assist in dissolving their partnership

   c. Preparing financial information for certain members of management of the employing organization who are seeking to undertake a management buy-out

   d. Being responsible for selecting a vendor for the member’s employing organization when the member or his or her immediate family member could benefit financially from the transaction

   e. Serving in a governance capacity or influencing an employing organization that is approving certain investments for the company in which one of those specific investments will increase the value of the personal investment portfolio of the member or his or her immediate family member

Identification of a Conflict of Interest

.05 In identifying whether a conflict of interest exists or may be created, a member should take reasonable steps to determine

   a. the nature of the relevant interests and relationships between the parties involved and

   b. the nature of the services and its implication for relevant parties.

.06 The nature of the relevant interests and relationships and the services may change over time. The member should remain alert to such changes for the purposes of identifying circumstances that might create a conflict of interest.
Evaluation of a Conflict of Interest

.07 When an actual conflict of interest has been identified, the member should evaluate the significance of the threat created by the conflict of interest to determine if the threat is at an acceptable level. Members should consider both qualitative and quantitative factors when evaluating the significance of the threat, including the extent to which existing safeguards already reduce the threat to an acceptable level.

.08 In evaluating the significance of an identified threat, members should consider the following:

a. The significance of relevant interests or relationships.

b. The significance of the threats created by undertaking the professional service or services. In general, the more direct the connection between the member and the matter on which the parties’ interests are in conflict, the more significant the threat to compliance with the rule will be.

.09 If the member concludes that the threat is not at an acceptable level, the member should apply safeguards to eliminate the threat or reduce it to an acceptable level. Examples of safeguards include the following:

a. Restructuring or segregating certain responsibilities and duties

b. Obtaining appropriate oversight

c. Withdrawing from the decision making process related to the matter giving rise to the conflict of interest

d. Consulting with third parties, such as a professional body, legal counsel, or another professional accountant

.10 In cases where an identified threat may be so significant that no safeguards will eliminate the threat or reduce it to an acceptable level, or the member is unable to implement effective safeguards, the member should (a) decline to perform or discontinue the professional services that would result in the conflict of interest; or (b) terminate the relevant relationships or dispose of the relevant interests to eliminate the threat or reduce it to an acceptable level.

Disclosure of a Conflict of Interest and Consent

.11 When a conflict of interest exists, the member should disclose the nature of the conflict to the relevant parties, including to the appropriate levels within the employing organization and obtain their consent to undertake the professional service. The member should disclose the conflict of interest and obtain consent even if the member concludes that threats are at an acceptable level.

.12 The member is encouraged to document the nature of the circumstances giving rise to the conflict of interest, the safeguards applied to eliminate or reduce the threats to an acceptable level, and the consent obtained.

.13 When addressing a conflict of interest, a member is encouraged to seek guidance from within the employing organization or from others, such as a professional body, legal counsel, or another professional accountant. When making disclosures and seeking guidance of third parties, the member should remain alert to the requirements of the "Confidential Information Obtained From Employment or Volunteer Activities" interpretation [2.400.070] of the "Acts Discreditable Rule" [2.400.001]. In addition, federal, state, or local statutes, or regulations concerning confidentiality of employer information may be more restrictive than the requirements contained in the Code of Professional Conduct.

.14 A member may encounter other threats to compliance with the "Integrity and Objectivity Rule" [2.100.001]. This may occur, for example, when preparing or reporting financial information as a result of undue pressure from others within the employing organization or financial, business or personal
relationships that close relatives or immediate family members of the member have with the employing organization. Guidance on managing such threats is covered by the "Knowing Misrepresentations in the Preparation of Financial Statements or Records" interpretation [2.130.010] and the "Subordination of Judgment" interpretation [2.130.020] under the "Integrity and Objectivity Rule."

[See Revision History Table.]

2.120 Gifts and Entertainment

2.120.010 Offering or Accepting Gifts or Entertainment

.01 For purposes of this interpretation, a customer or vendor of the member's employer includes a representative of the customer or vendor.

.02 When a member offers to, or accepts gifts or entertainment from, a customer or vendor of the member's employer, self-interest, familiarity, or undue influence threats to the member's compliance with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [2.100.001] may exist.

.03 Threats to compliance with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [2.100.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards, and the member would be presumed to lack integrity in violation of the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” in the following circumstances:

a. The member offers to, or accepts gifts or entertainment from, a customer or vendor of the member’s employer that violate applicable laws, rules, or regulations or the policies of the member’s employer or the customer or vendor.

b. The member knows of the violation or demonstrates recklessness in not knowing.

.04 A member should evaluate the significance of any threats to determine if they are at an acceptable level. Threats are at an acceptable level when gifts or entertainment are reasonable in the circumstances. The member should exercise judgment in determining whether gifts or entertainment would be considered reasonable in the circumstances. The following are examples of relevant facts and circumstances:

a. The nature of the gift or entertainment

b. The occasion giving rise to the gift or entertainment

c. The cost or value of the gift or entertainment

d. The nature, frequency, and value of other gifts and entertainment offered or accepted

e. Whether the entertainment was associated with the active conduct of business directly before, during, or after the entertainment

f. Whether other customers or vendors also participated in the entertainment

g. The individuals from the customer or vendor and a member's employer who participated in the entertainment

.05 Threats to compliance with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [2.100.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level through the application of safeguards if a member offers to, or accepts gifts or entertainment from, a customer or vendor of the member’s employer that is not reasonable in the circumstances. The member would be considered to lack objectivity in violation of the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule,” under these circumstances. [Prior reference: paragraphs .226–.227 of ET section 191]
2.130 Preparing and Reporting Information

2.130.010 Knowing Misrepresentations in the Preparation and Presentation of Information

.01 **Members** at all levels in an employing organization may be involved in the preparation and presentation of information for use both within and outside the employing organization. Stakeholders for whom such information is prepared or presented include the following:

   a. Management and **those charged with governance**
   
   b. Investors, lenders, and other creditors
   
   c. Regulators

.02 This information may assist stakeholders in understanding and evaluating aspects of the employing organization’s operations and finances and in making decisions concerning the employing organization. This includes financial and non-financial information that may be made public or used for internal purposes such as the following:

   a. Operating and performance reports
   
   b. Decision support analyses
   
   c. Budgets and forecasts
   
   d. Information provided to the internal and external auditors
   
   e. Risk analyses
   
   f. General and special purpose financial statements
   
   g. Tax returns
   
   h. Reports filed with regulators for legal and compliance purposes

.03 **Members** who are responsible for recording, maintaining, preparing, approving, or presenting information should do so in accordance with the "Integrity and Objectivity Rule" [2.100.001] as follows:

   a. Presenting the information in accordance with a relevant reporting framework, where applicable
   
   b. Preparing or presenting information in a manner that is intended not to mislead, including not to influence contractual or regulatory outcomes inappropriately
   
   c. Preparing or presenting information without omissions that would render the information misleading

.04 This responsibility involves using professional judgment in the following:

   a. Representing the facts accurately and completely in all material respects
   
   b. Describing clearly the true nature of business transactions or activities
   
   c. Classifying and recording information in a timely and proper manner
Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements and Records

.05 Threats to compliance with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [2.100.001] would not be at an acceptable level and could not be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards, and the member would be considered to have knowingly misrepresented facts in violation of the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule,” if the member

a. makes, or permits or directs another to make, materially false and misleading entries in an entity’s financial statements or records;

b. fails to correct an entity’s financial statements or records that are materially false and misleading when the member has the authority to record the entries; or

c. signs, or permits or directs another to sign, a document containing materially false and misleading information. [Prior reference: paragraph .02 of ET section 102]

.06 Preparing or presenting information may require the exercise of discretion in making professional judgments. Preparing or presenting such information in compliance with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [2.100.001] requires the member not to exercise such discretion with the intention of misleading.

Preparation and Presentation of Information Not Subject to a Reporting Framework

.07 When performing professional activities, especially those that do not require compliance with a relevant reporting framework, the member should use professional judgment to identify and take into account the purpose for which the information is to be used, the context in which it is provided, and the audience to whom it is addressed. For example, when preparing or presenting pro forma reports, budgets, or forecasts, the inclusion of relevant estimates, approximations, and assumptions, where appropriate, would enable those who may rely on such information to form their own judgments. The member may also consider clarifying the intended audience, context, and purpose of the information presented.

Reliance on the Work of Others

.08 A member who intends to rely on the work of others, either internal or external to the organization, should use professional judgment to determine what steps to take, if any, to ensure that the requirements set out in paragraphs .03, .04, and .05 are fulfilled. Factors to consider in determining whether reliance on others is reasonable include reputation, expertise, objectivity, resources available to the individual or organization, and whether the other individual is subject to applicable professional and ethical standards. Such information may be gained from prior association with, or from consulting others about, the individual or the organization.

Association With Misleading Information

.09 If the member knows or has reason to believe that the information with which he or she is associated is misleading, the member should apply appropriate safeguards to seek to resolve the matter, including the following:

a. Consulting the employing organization’s policies and procedures (for example, an ethics or whistleblowing policy) regarding how such matters should be addressed internally

b. Discussing concerns that the information is misleading with the member’s supervisor or the appropriate levels of management within the member’s employing organization or those charged with governance and requesting such individuals to take appropriate action to resolve the matter. Such action may include the following:

i. Having the information corrected
ii. If the information has already been disclosed to the intended users, informing them of the correct information

.10 If the member determines that appropriate action has not been taken and continues to have reason to believe that the information is misleading, threats to compliance with the "Integrity and Objectivity Rule" [2.100.001] would not be at an acceptable level. In such circumstances, the member, being alert to the requirements of the "Confidential Information Obtained From Employment or Volunteer Activities" interpretation [2.400.070], should consider one or more of the following safeguards:

a. Consulting with a relevant professional body

b. Consulting with the employing organization's internal auditor and external accountant

c. Determining whether any requirements exist to communicate to third parties, including users of the information, the organization’s external accountant, or regulatory authorities

d. Consulting legal counsel regarding his or her responsibilities

.11 If, after exhausting all feasible options, the member determines that appropriate action has not been taken and there is reason to believe that the information is still misleading, the member should refuse to be or to remain associated with the information. The member also should consider whether to continue a relationship with the employing organization.

.12 Nothing in this interpretation precludes a member from resigning from the organization at any time. However, resignation may not relieve the member of responsibilities in the situation, including any responsibility to disclose concerns to third parties, such as regulatory authorities or the employing organization’s (or former employing organization's) external accountant.

.13 The member is also encouraged to document his or her understanding of the facts, the accounting principles or other relevant professional standards involved, and the communications and parties with whom these matters were discussed, the courses of action considered, and how the member attempted to address the matter.

.14 When threats to compliance with the "Integrity and Objectivity Rule" [2.100.001] are due to differences of opinion between a member and his or her supervisor (or any other person within the member’s organization) relating to the application of accounting principles, auditing standards, or other relevant professional standards, the member should also refer to the “Subordination of Judgment” interpretation [2.130.020].

[See Revision History Table]

2.130.020 Subordination of Judgment

.01 The “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [2.100.001] prohibits a member from knowingly misrepresenting facts or subordinating his or her judgment when performing professional services for an employer or on a volunteer basis. This interpretation addresses differences of opinion between a member and his or her supervisor or any other person within the member’s organization.

.02 Self-interest, familiarity, and undue influence threats to the member’s compliance with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [2.100.001] may exist when a member and his or her supervisor or any other person within the member’s organization have a difference of opinion relating to the application of accounting principles; auditing standards; or other relevant professional standards, including standards applicable to tax and consulting services or applicable laws or regulations.

.03 A member should evaluate the significance of any threats to determine if they are at an acceptable level. Threats are at an acceptable level if the member concludes that the position taken does not result in a
material misrepresentation of fact or a violation of applicable laws or regulations. If threats are not at an acceptable level, the member should apply the safeguards in paragraphs .06–.08 to eliminate or reduce the threat(s) to an acceptable level so that the member does not subordinate his or her judgment.

.04 In evaluating the significance of any identified threats, the member should determine, after appropriate research or consultation, whether the result of the position taken by the supervisor or other person

a. fails to comply with professional standards, when applicable;

b. creates a material misrepresentation of fact; or

c. may violate applicable laws or regulations.

.05 If the member concludes that threats are at an acceptable level, the member should discuss his or her conclusions with the person taking the position. No further action would be needed under this interpretation.

.06 If the member concludes that the position results in a material misrepresentation of fact or a violation of applicable laws or regulations, then threats would not be at an acceptable level. In such circumstances, the member should discuss his or her concerns with the supervisor.

.07 If the difference of opinion is not resolved after discussing the concerns with the supervisor, the member should discuss his or her concerns with the appropriate higher level(s) of management within the member’s organization (for example, the supervisor’s immediate superior, senior management, and those charged with governance).

.08 If after discussing the concerns with the supervisor and appropriate higher level(s) of management within the member’s organization, the member concludes that appropriate action was not taken, then the member should consider, in no specific order, the following safeguards to ensure that threats to the member’s compliance with the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [2.100.001] are eliminated or reduced to an acceptable level:

a. Determine whether the organization’s internal policies and procedures have any additional requirements for reporting differences of opinion.

b. Determine whether he or she is responsible for communicating to third parties, such as regulatory authorities or the organization’s (former organization’s) external accountant. In considering such communications, the member should be cognizant of his or her obligations under the “Confidential Information Obtained From Employment or Volunteer Activities” interpretation [2.400.070] of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [2.400.001] and the “Obligation of a Member to His or Her Employer’s External Accountant” interpretation [2.130.030] of the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [2.100.001].

c. Consult with his or her legal counsel regarding his or her responsibilities.

d. Document his or her understanding of the facts, the accounting principles, auditing standards, or other relevant professional standards involved or applicable laws or regulations and the conversations and parties with whom these matters were discussed.

.09 If the member concludes that no safeguards can eliminate or reduce the threats to an acceptable level or if the member concludes that appropriate action was not taken, then he or she should consider the continuing relationship with the member’s organization and take appropriate steps to eliminate his or her exposure to subordination of judgment.

.10 Nothing in this interpretation precludes a member from resigning from the organization at any time. However, resignation may not relieve the member of responsibilities in the situation, including any
responsibility to disclose concerns to third parties, such as regulatory authorities or the employer’s (former employer’s) external accountant.

.11  A member should use professional judgment and apply similar safeguards, as appropriate, to other situations involving a difference of opinion as described in this interpretation so that the member does not subordinate his or her judgment. [Prior reference: paragraph .05 of ET section 102]

2.130.030 Obligation of a Member to His or Her Employer’s External Accountant

.01  The “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [2.100.001] requires a member to maintain objectivity and integrity in the performance of a professional service. When dealing with an employer’s external accountant, a member must be candid and not knowingly misrepresent facts or knowingly fail to disclose material facts. This would include, for example, responding to specific inquiries for which the employer’s external accountant requests written representation. [Prior reference: paragraph .04 of ET section 102]

2.160 Educational Services

2.160.010 Educational Services

.01  Members who perform educational services, such as teaching full or part time at a university, teaching a continuing professional education course, or engaging in research and scholarship, are performing professional services and, therefore, are subject to the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [2.100.001]. [Prior reference: paragraph .06 of ET section 102]

2.170 Pressure to Breach the Rules

2.170.010 Pressure to Breach the Rules

.01  This interpretation addresses pressures that could result in a member taking actions that breach or cause others to breach the rules, particularly the "Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [2.100.001].

.02  A member may face pressure that could create threats, for example undue influence threats, to compliance with the "Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [2.100.001] when undertaking a professional service. Pressure may be explicit or implicit. Pressure may come from within the employing organization, for example, from a colleague or superior, from an external individual or organization such as a vendor, customer or lender, or from the need to meet internal or external targets and expectations.

.03  A member should not allow pressure from others to result in a breach of the "Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [2.100.001]. A member also should not place pressure on others that the member knows, or has reason to believe, would result in the other individuals breaching the rules of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct.

.04  Examples of pressure that could result in a breach of the "Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [2.100.001] include the following:

   a. Pressure related to conflicts of interest, for example, pressure from a family member bidding to act as a vendor to the member’s employing organization to select that vendor over another prospective vendor

   Refer to the “Conflicts of Interest for Members in Business” interpretation [2.110.010] for additional guidance.

   b. Pressure to influence presentation of information:

      i. Pressure to report misleading financial results to meet investor, analyst, or lender expectations.

      ii. Pressure from elected officials on government accountants to misrepresent programs or projects to voters.
iii. Pressure from colleagues to misstate income, expenditure, or rates of return to bias decision-making on capital projects and acquisitions.

iv. Pressure from superiors to approve or process expenditures that are not legitimate business expenses.

v. Pressure to suppress internal audit reports containing adverse findings.

Refer to the "Knowing Misrepresentations in the Preparation and Presentation of Information" interpretation [2.130.010] for additional guidance.

c. Pressure to act without sufficient competence or due care:

i. Pressure from superiors to inappropriately reduce the extent of work performed.

ii. Pressure from superiors to perform a task without sufficient skills or training or within unrealistic deadlines.

Refer to the "General Standards Rule" [2.300.001] for additional guidance.

d. Pressure related to financial interests. For example, pressure to manipulate performance indicators from superiors, colleagues or others, such as those who may benefit from participation in compensation or incentive arrangements.

e. Pressure related to gifts or entertainment:

i. Pressure from others, either internal or external to the employing organization, to offer gifts or entertainment to inappropriately influence the judgment or decision-making process of an individual or organization.

ii. Pressure from colleagues to accept inappropriate gifts or entertainment from potential vendors in a bidding process.

Refer to the "Offering or Accepting Gifts or Entertainment" interpretation [2.120.010] for additional guidance.

.05 In determining whether the pressure could result in a breach of the "Integrity and Objectivity Rule" [2.100.001], the member might consider factors including the following:

a. The intent of the individual who is exerting the pressure and the nature and significance of the pressure.

b. The application of relevant laws, regulations, and professional standards to the circumstances.

c. The culture and leadership of the employing organization including the extent to which it emphasizes the importance of ethical behavior and the expectation that employees will act in an ethical manner. For example, a corporate culture that tolerates unethical behavior may increase the likelihood that the pressure would result in a breach of the rules.

d. Policies and procedures, if any, that the employing organization has established, such as ethics or human resources policies that address pressure.

.06 In considering the factors in paragraph .05 along with other factors, and being alert to the requirements of the "Confidential Information Obtained From Employment or Volunteer Activities" interpretation [2.400.070], the member may consult with the following:

a. A colleague, superior, human resources personnel, internal compliance personnel, or another professional accountant.
b. Relevant professional or regulatory bodies or industry associations.

c. Legal counsel.

.07 If the member determines that the pressure would result in a breach of the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [2.100.001], the member might consider safeguards, including these:

a. Discussing the matter with the individual who is exerting the pressure to seek to resolve it.

b. Discussing the matter with the member’s supervisor if the supervisor is not the individual exerting the pressure.

c. Escalating the matter within the employing organization, for example, with higher levels of management, internal or external auditors, or those charged with governance, including independent directors and, when appropriate, explaining any consequential risks to the organization.

d. Requesting restructuring or segregating certain responsibilities and duties so that the member is no longer involved with the individual or entity exerting the pressure, when doing so would eliminate the pressure to breach the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule.” For example, if a member is pressured in relation to a conflict of interest, the pressure to breach the rule may be eliminated if the member avoids being associated with the matter creating the conflict.

e. Disclosing the matter in accordance with the employing organization’s policies, including ethics and whistleblowing policies, using any established mechanism, such as a confidential ethics hotline.

f. Consulting with legal counsel.

.08 In situations in which the member determines that the pressure to breach the "Integrity and Objectivity Rule" [2.100.001] has not been eliminated, the member should do the following:

a. Decline to undertake or discontinue the professional activity that would result in a breach of the rule.

b. Consider whether to continue a relationship with the employing organization.

.09 The member is also encouraged to document the facts, the communications, the courses of action considered, the parties with whom these matters were discussed, and how the matter was addressed.

Effective Date

.10 This interpretation is effective August 31, 2017.

2.180 Responding to Noncompliance With Laws and Regulations

2.180.010 Responding to Noncompliance With Laws and Regulations

Introduction

.01 When a member in business encounters or is made aware of noncompliance or suspected noncompliance with laws and regulations in the course of carrying out professional services, threats to compliance with the "Integrity and Objectivity Rule" [2.100.001] may exist. The purpose of this interpretation is to set out the member’s responsibilities when encountering such noncompliance or suspected noncompliance and guide the member in evaluating the implications of the matter and the possible courses of action when responding to it. This interpretation applies regardless of the nature of the employing organization.

.02 Noncompliance with laws and regulations (noncompliance) comprises acts of omission or commission, intentional or unintentional, that are contrary to the prevailing laws or regulations and are committed by
the member’s employing organization or by those charged with governance, by management, or by other individuals working for or under the direction of the employing organization.

.03 When responding to noncompliance or suspected noncompliance in the course of carrying out professional services, the member should consider the member’s obligations under the "Confidential Information Obtained From Employment or Volunteer Activities" interpretation [2.400.070] of the "Acts Discreditable Rule" [2.400.001]. For example, a member should not disclose the noncompliance or suspected noncompliance to a third party without the employer’s consent unless expressly permitted under the "Confidential Information Obtained From Employment or Volunteer Activities" interpretation [2.400.070], such as when reporting the noncompliance or suspected noncompliance to a regulatory authority in order to comply with applicable laws and regulations, as discussed in paragraph .04.

.04 Some regulators, for example, the SEC or state boards of accountancy, may have regulatory provisions governing how a member should address noncompliance or suspected noncompliance which may differ from or go beyond this interpretation. In some circumstances, state and federal civil and criminal laws may also impose additional requirements. When encountering noncompliance or suspected noncompliance, a member has a responsibility to obtain an understanding of those legal or regulatory provisions and comply with them, including any requirement to report the matter to an appropriate authority and any prohibition on alerting the relevant party prior to making any disclosure.

.05 A distinguishing mark of the accounting profession is its acceptance of the responsibility to act in the public interest. When responding to noncompliance or suspected noncompliance, the objectives of a member are as follows:

a. To comply with the "Integrity and Objectivity Rule" [2.100.001]

b. To alert management or, when appropriate, those charged with governance of the employing organization, to enable them to

i. rectify, remediate, or mitigate the consequences of the identified or suspected noncompliance or

ii. deter the commission of the noncompliance when it has not yet occurred

c. To take such further action as appropriate in the public interest

d. To comply with applicable laws, regulations, and the "Compliance With Standards Rule" [2.310.001]

Applicability

.06 This interpretation does not apply to the following:

a. Personal misconduct unrelated to the business activities of the employing organization

b. Noncompliance by parties other than

i. the employing organization,

ii. those charged with governance,

iii. management, or

iv. other individuals working for or under the direction of the employing organization.

c. The provision of professional services by a member in business involving the following:

i. A litigation or investigation as defined in AICPA Statement on Standards for Forensic Services No. 1.
ii. A matter where the purpose is to identify, reach a conclusion regarding, or otherwise respond to a known or potential NOCLAR.

iii. A matter pursuant to which the protections set forth in IRC Section 7525 or any comparable state or local statutes apply.

iv. A matter where compliance with this interpretation would cause a violation of law or regulation.

A member may nevertheless find the guidance in this interpretation helpful in considering how to respond in these situations.

Scope

.07 This interpretation sets out the approach to be taken by a member who encounters or is made aware of noncompliance or suspected noncompliance with the following:

a. Laws and regulations generally recognized to have a direct effect on the determination of material amounts and disclosures in the employing organization's financial statements

b. Other laws and regulations that do not have a direct effect on the determination of the amounts and disclosures in the employing organization’s financial statements, but compliance with which may be fundamental to the operating aspects of the employing organization’s business, to its ability to continue its business, or to avoid material penalties

.08 Examples of laws and regulations which this interpretation addresses may include those that deal with the following:

a. Fraud, corruption, and bribery

b. Money laundering

c. Securities markets and trading

d. Banking and other financial products and services

e. Data protection

f. Tax and pension liabilities and payments

g. Environmental protection

h. Public health and safety

.09 Noncompliance may result in fines, litigation, or other consequences for the employing organization that may have a material effect on its financial statements. Importantly, such noncompliance may have wider public interest implications in terms of potentially substantial harm to investors, creditors, employees, or the general public. For the purposes of this interpretation, an act that causes substantial harm is one that results in serious adverse consequences to any of these parties in financial or nonfinancial terms.

.10 A member who encounters or is made aware of matters that are clearly inconsequential is not required to comply with this interpretation with respect to such matters.

Responsibilities of the Employing Organization’s Management and Those Charged With Governance

.11 It is the responsibility of the employing organization’s management, with the oversight of those charged with governance, to ensure that the employing organization’s business activities are conducted in
accordance with laws and regulations. It is also the responsibility of management and those charged with governance to identify and address any noncompliance by the employing organization or by an individual charged with governance of the entity, by a member of management, or by other individuals working for or under the direction of the employing organization.

Responsibilities of Members in Business

.12 Many employing organizations have established protocols and procedures (for example, an ethics policy or internal whistleblowing mechanism) regarding how noncompliance or suspected noncompliance by the employing organization should be raised internally. Such protocols and procedures may allow for matters to be reported anonymously through designated channels. If these protocols and procedures exist within the member’s employing organization, the member should consider them in determining how to respond to such noncompliance.

.13 When a member becomes aware of a matter to which this interpretation applies, the member should take timely steps to comply with this interpretation, taking into account the member’s understanding of the nature of the matter and the potential harm to the interests of the employing organization, investors, creditors, employees, or the general public.

Responsibilities of Members Who Are Senior Professional Accountants in Business

.14 Members who are senior professional accountants in business are directors, officers, or senior employees able to exert significant influence over, and make decisions regarding, the acquisition, deployment, and control of the employing organization’s human, financial, technological, physical, and intangible resources. Because of their roles, positions, and spheres of influence within the employing organization, there is a greater expectation for them to take whatever action is appropriate in the public interest to respond to noncompliance or suspected noncompliance than other professional accountants within the employing organization.

.15 Obtaining an understanding of the matter. If, in the course of carrying out professional services, a member who is a senior professional accountant becomes aware of credible information concerning an instance of noncompliance or suspected noncompliance, the member should obtain an understanding of the matter, including the following:

a. The nature of the act and the circumstances in which it has occurred or is likely to occur

b. The application of the relevant laws and regulations to the circumstances

c. The potential consequences to the employing organization, investors, creditors, employees, or the wider public

.16 A member who is a senior professional accountant is expected to apply knowledge, professional judgment, and expertise but is not expected to have a level of understanding of laws and regulations beyond that required for the member’s role within the employing organization. Whether an act constitutes noncompliance is ultimately a matter to be determined by a court or other appropriate adjudicative body.

.17 Depending on the nature and significance of the matter, the member may cause, or take appropriate steps to cause, the matter to be investigated internally.

.18 Addressing the matter. If the member who is a senior professional accountant identifies or suspects that noncompliance has occurred or may occur, the member should, subject to paragraph .12, discuss the matter with the member’s immediate superior, if any, to determine how the matter should be addressed. If the member’s immediate superior appears to be involved in the matter, the member should discuss the matter with the next higher level of authority within the employing organization.

.19 The member who is a senior professional accountant should take the appropriate steps to
Part 2 — Members in Business

a. have the matter communicated to those charged with governance to obtain their concurrence regarding appropriate actions to take to respond to the matter and to enable them to fulfill their responsibilities.

b. comply with applicable laws and regulations, including legal or regulatory provisions governing the reporting of noncompliance or suspected noncompliance to an appropriate authority.

c. have the consequences of the noncompliance or suspected noncompliance rectified, remediated, or mitigated.

d. reduce the risk of reoccurrence.

e. seek to deter the commission of the noncompliance if it has not yet occurred.

.20 In addition to responding to the matter in accordance with the provisions of this section, the member who is a senior professional accountant should disclose the matter to the employing organization’s external auditor, if any, if the member determines such disclosure is necessary pursuant to the member’s obligation to provide all information necessary to enable the auditor to perform the audit. See the "Obligation of a Member to His or Her Employer’s External Accountant” interpretation [2.130.030] of the "Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [2.100.001] for additional guidance.

.21 Determining whether further action is necessary. The member who is a senior professional accountant should evaluate the appropriateness of the response of the member’s superiors, if any, and those charged with governance.

.22 Relevant factors to consider in evaluating the appropriateness of the response of the member’s superiors, where applicable, and those charged with governance may include whether

a. the response is timely.

b. they have taken or authorized appropriate action to seek to rectify, remediate, or mitigate the consequences of the noncompliance, or to avert the noncompliance if it has not yet occurred.

c. the matter has been disclosed to an appropriate authority where appropriate and, if so, whether the disclosure appears adequate.

.23 In light of the response of the member’s superiors, if applicable, and those charged with governance, the member should determine if further action is necessary in the public interest. The determination of whether further action is necessary, and the nature and extent of it, may depend on various factors, including these:

a. The legal and regulatory framework

b. The urgency of the matter

c. The pervasiveness of the matter throughout the employing organization

d. Whether the member who is a senior professional accountant continues to have confidence in the integrity of the member’s superiors and, if applicable, those charged with governance

e. Whether the noncompliance or suspected noncompliance is likely to reoccur

f. Whether there is credible evidence of actual or potential substantial harm to the interests of the employing organization, investors, creditors, employees, or the general public

.24 Examples of circumstances that may cause the member who is a senior professional accountant no longer to have confidence in the integrity of the member’s superiors, if applicable, and those charged with governance include situations such as the following:
a. The member suspects or has evidence of management’s involvement or intended involvement in any noncompliance.

b. Contrary to legal or regulatory requirements, management has not reported the matter, or authorized the matter to be reported, to an appropriate authority within a reasonable period.

.25 Further action by the member who is a senior professional accountant may include the following:

a. Informing the management of the parent entity of the matter if the employing organization is a member of a group

b. Resigning from the employing organization

c. Reporting the noncompliance or suspected noncompliance to an appropriate authority unless prohibited by laws or regulations

.26 When the member who is a senior professional accountant determines that resigning from the employing organization would be appropriate, doing so would not be a substitute for taking other actions that may be necessary to achieve the member’s objectives under this section.

.27 The determination of whether to disclose the matter to an appropriate authority may also depend on external factors such as the following:

a. Whether there is an appropriate authority that is able to receive the information and cause the matter to be investigated and action to be taken. Identifying an appropriate authority will depend upon the nature of the matter. For example, an appropriate authority could be a securities regulator in the case of fraudulent financial reporting or an environmental protection agency in the case of a breach of environmental laws and regulations.

b. Whether there exists robust and credible protection from civil, criminal, or professional liability or retaliation afforded by legislation or regulation, such as under whistleblowing legislation or regulation.

c. Whether there are actual or potential threats to the physical safety of the senior professional accountant or other individuals.

.28 As consideration of the matter may involve complex analysis and judgments, the member who is a senior professional accountant may want to consider consulting internally or externally, including obtaining legal or other advice to understand the member’s options and the implications of taking any particular course of action.

.29 Documentation. In relation to an identified or suspected act of noncompliance that falls within the scope of this section, the member who is a senior professional accountant is encouraged to have the following matters documented:

a. The matter

b. The results of discussions with the member’s superiors, where applicable, and those charged with governance and other parties

c. How the member’s superiors, where applicable, and those charged with governance have responded to the matter

d. The judgments made and the courses of action the member took

e. How the member is satisfied that the member has fulfilled the responsibility set out in paragraph .23
Responsibilities of Members Other Than Those Who Are Senior Professional Accountants in Business

.30 If, in the course of carrying out professional services, a member becomes aware of information concerning an instance of noncompliance or suspected noncompliance, the member should seek to obtain an understanding of the matter, including the nature of the act and the circumstances in which it has occurred or may occur.

.31 The member is expected to apply knowledge, professional judgment, and expertise but is not expected to have a level of understanding of laws and regulations beyond that required for the member’s role within the employing organization. Whether an act constitutes noncompliance is ultimately a matter to be determined by a court or other appropriate adjudicative body.

.32 If the member identifies or suspects that noncompliance has occurred or may occur, the member should, subject to paragraph .12, inform an immediate superior to enable the superior to take appropriate action. If the member’s immediate superior appears to be involved in the matter, the member should inform the next higher level of authority within the employing organization.

.33 In addition to responding to the matter in accordance with the provisions of this section, the member should disclose the matter to the employing organization’s external auditor, if any, if the member determines such disclosure is necessary pursuant to the member’s obligation to provide all information necessary to enable the auditor to perform the audit. See the "Obligation of a Member to His or Her Employer’s External Accountant" interpretation [2.130.030] for additional guidance.

.34 Further action by the member may include reporting the noncompliance or suspected noncompliance to an appropriate authority unless prohibited by laws or regulations. In determining whether to disclose the matter to an appropriate authority, the member may consider the factors in paragraph .27.

.35 Documentation. In relation to an identified or suspected act of noncompliance that falls within the scope of this section, the member is encouraged to have the following matters documented:

a. The matter

b. The results of discussions with the member’s superior; management and, where applicable, those charged with governance; and other parties

c. How the member’s superior has responded to the matter

d. The judgments made and the courses of action the member took

Effective Date

.36 This interpretation is effective June 30, 2023. Early implementation is allowed.

2.300 General Standards

2.300.001 General Standards Rule

.01 A member shall comply with the following standards and with any interpretations thereof by bodies designated by Council.

a. Professional Competence. Undertake only those professional services that the member or the member’s firm can reasonably expect to be completed with professional competence.

b. Due Professional Care. Exercise due professional care in the performance of professional services.

c. Planning and Supervision. Adequately plan and supervise the performance of professional services.
d. Sufficient Relevant Data. Obtain sufficient relevant data to afford a reasonable basis for conclusions or recommendations in relation to any professional services performed.

.02 See appendix A, “Council Resolution Designating Bodies to Promulgate Technical Standards.” [Prior reference: paragraph .01 of ET section 201]

Interpretations Under the General Standards Rule

2.300.005 Application of the Conceptual Framework for Members in Business and Ethical Conflicts

.01 In the absence of an interpretation of the “General Standards Rule” [2.300.001] that addresses a particular relationship or circumstance, a member should apply the “Conceptual Framework for Members in Business” [2.000.010].

.02 A member would be considered in violation of the “General Standards Rule” [2.300.001] if the member cannot demonstrate that safeguards were applied that eliminated or reduced significant threats to an acceptable level.

.03 A member should consider the guidance in “Ethical Conflicts” [2.000.020] when addressing ethical conflicts that may arise when the member encounters obstacles to following an appropriate course of action. Such obstacles may be due to internal or external pressures or to conflicts in applying relevant professional and legal standards, or both. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.04 Paragraphs .01 and .02 are effective December 15, 2015, and early implementation is allowed provided the member has implemented the revised code. Paragraph .03 is effective December 15, 2014.

2.300.010 Competence

.01 Competence, in this context, means that the member or member’s staff possesses the appropriate technical qualifications to perform professional services and, as required, supervises and evaluates the quality of work performed. Competence encompasses knowledge of the profession’s standards, the techniques and technical subject matter involved, and the ability to exercise sound judgment in applying such knowledge in the performance of professional services.

.02 A member’s agreement to perform professional services implies that the member has the necessary competence to complete those services according to professional standards and to apply the member’s knowledge and skill with reasonable care and diligence. However, the member does not assume a responsibility for infallibility of knowledge or judgment.

.03 The member may have the knowledge required to complete the services in accordance with professional standards prior to performance. A normal part of providing professional services involves performing additional research or consulting with others to gain sufficient competence.

.04 If a member is unable to gain sufficient competence, the member should suggest the involvement of a competent person to perform the needed professional service, either independently or as an associate. [Prior reference: paragraph .02 of ET section 201]

2.300.030 Submission of Financial Statements

.01 When a member is a stockholder, a partner, a director, an officer, or an employee of an entity and, in this capacity, prepares or submits the entity’s financial statements to third parties, the member should clearly communicate, preferably in writing, the member’s relationship to the entity and should not imply that the member is independent of the entity. In addition, if the communication states affirmatively that the financial statements are presented in conformity with the applicable financial reporting framework, the member should comply with the “Accounting Principles Rule” [2.320.001].
2.310 Compliance With Standards

2.310.001 Compliance With Standards Rule

.01 A member who performs auditing, review, compilation, management consulting, tax, or other professional services shall comply with standards promulgated by bodies designated by Council.

.02 See appendix A. “Council Resolution Designating Bodies to Promulgate Technical Standards.” [Prior reference: paragraph .01 of ET section 202]

Interpretations Under the Compliance with Standards Rule

2.310.005 Application of the Conceptual Framework for Members in Business and Ethical Conflicts

.01 In the absence of an interpretation of the “Compliance With Standards Rule” [2.310.001] that addresses a particular relationship or circumstance, a member should apply the “Conceptual Framework for Members in Business” [2.000.010]

.02 A member would be considered in violation of the “Compliance With Standards Rule” [2.310.001] if the member cannot demonstrate that safeguards were applied that eliminated or reduced significant threats to an acceptable level.

.03 A member should consider the guidance in “Ethical Conflicts” [2.000.020] when addressing ethical conflicts that may arise when the member encounters obstacles to following an appropriate course of action. Such obstacles may be due to internal or external pressures or to conflicts in applying relevant professional or legal standards, or both. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.04 Paragraphs .01 and .02 are effective December 15, 2015, and early implementation is allowed provided the member has implemented the revised code. Paragraph .03 is effective December 15, 2014.

2.320 Accounting Principles

2.320.001 Accounting Principles Rule

.01 A member shall not (1) express an opinion or state affirmatively that the financial statements or other financial data of any entity are presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles or (2) state that he or she is not aware of any material modifications that should be made to such statements or data in order for them to be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, if such statements or data contain any departure from an accounting principle promulgated by bodies designated by Council to establish such principles that has a material effect on the statements or data taken as a whole. If, however, the statements or data contain such a departure and the member can demonstrate that due to unusual circumstances the financial statements or data would otherwise have been misleading, the member can comply with the rule by describing the departure, its approximate effects, if practicable, and the reasons why compliance with the principle would result in a misleading statement.

.02 See appendix A. “Council Resolution Designating Bodies to Promulgate Technical Standards.” [Prior reference: paragraph .01 of ET section 203]
Interpretations Under the Accounting Principles Rule

2.320.005 Application of the Conceptual Framework for Members in Business and Ethical Conflicts

.01 In the absence of an interpretation of the “Accounting Principles Rule” [2.320.001] that addresses a particular relationship or circumstance, a member should apply the “Conceptual Framework for Members in Business” [2.000.010].

.02 A member would be considered in violation of the “Accounting Principles Rule” [2.320.001] if the member cannot demonstrate that safeguards were applied that eliminated or reduced significant threats to an acceptable level.

.03 A member should consider the guidance in “Ethical Conflicts” [2.000.020] when addressing ethical conflicts that may arise when the member encounters obstacles to following an appropriate course of action. Such obstacles may be due to internal or external pressures or to conflicts in applying relevant professional or legal standards, or both. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.04 Paragraphs .01 and .02 are effective December 15, 2015 and early implementation is allowed provided the member has implemented the revised code. Paragraph .03 is effective December 15, 2014.

2.320.010 Responsibility for Affirming That Financial Statements Are in Conformity With the Applicable Financial Reporting Framework

.01 A member shall not state affirmatively that an entity’s financial statements or other financial data are presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) if such statements or data contain any departure from an accounting principle promulgated by a body designated by Council to establish such principles. Members who affirm that financial statements or other financial data are presented in conformity with GAAP should comply with the “Accounting Principles Rule” [2.320.001]. A member’s representation in a letter or other communication that an entity’s financial statements are in conformity with GAAP may be considered an affirmative statement within the meaning of this rule with respect to the member who signed the letter or other communication (for example, the member signed a report to a regulatory authority, a creditor, or an auditor). [Prior reference: paragraph .05 ET section 203]

2.320.020 Status of Financial Accounting Standards Board, Governmental Accounting Standards Board, Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board, and International Accounting Standards Board Interpretations

.01 The “Accounting Principles Rule” [2.320.001] authorizes Council to designate bodies to establish accounting principles. Council has designated the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) as such a body and has resolved that FASB Accounting Standards Codification® (ASC) constitutes accounting principles as contemplated in the rule. Council designated the Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB), with respect to Statements of Governmental Accounting Standards issued in July 1984 and thereafter, as the body to establish financial accounting principles for state and local governmental entities, pursuant to the “Accounting Principles Rule.” Council designated the Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board (FASAB), with respect to Statements of Federal Accounting Standards adopted and issued in March 1993 and subsequently, as the body to establish accounting principles for federal government entities, pursuant to the “Accounting Principles Rule.” Council designated the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) as an accounting body for purposes of establishing international financial accounting and reporting principles.

.02 Reference to GAAP in the “Accounting Principles Rule” [2.320.001] means those accounting principles promulgated by bodies designated by Council, which are listed in paragraph .01 and in appendix A, “Council Resolution Designating Bodies to Promulgate Technical Standards.”
The Professional Ethics Division will look to the codification or statements and any interpretations thereof issued by FASB, GASB, FASAB, or IASB in determining whether a member has departed from an accounting principle established by a designated accounting standard-setter in FASB ASC, a Statement of Governmental Accounting Standards, a Statement of Federal Accounting Standards, or International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS). [Prior reference: paragraph .03 of ET section 203]

**2.320.030 Departures From Generally Accepted Accounting Principles**

.01 It is difficult to anticipate all the circumstances in which accounting principles may be applied. However, there is a strong presumption that adherence to GAAP would, in nearly all instances, result in financial statements that are not misleading. The “Accounting Principles Rule” [2.320.001] recognizes that, upon occasion, there may be unusual circumstances when the literal application of GAAP would have the effect of rendering financial statements misleading. In such cases, the proper accounting treatment to apply is that which will not render the financial statements misleading.

.02 The question of what constitutes unusual circumstances, as referred to in the “Accounting Principles Rule” [2.320.001], is a matter of professional judgment involving the ability to support the position that adherence to a promulgated principle within GAAP would be regarded generally by reasonable persons as producing misleading financial statements.

.03 Examples of circumstances that may justify a departure from GAAP include new legislation or evolution of a new form of business transaction. Examples of circumstances that would not justify departures from GAAP include an unusual degree of materiality or conflicting industry practices. [Prior reference: paragraph .02 of ET section 203]

.04 If the statements or data contain such departures, see the “Accounting Principles Rule” [2.320.001] for further guidance.

**2.320.040 Financial Statements Prepared Pursuant to Financial Reporting Frameworks Other Than GAAP**

.01 Reference to GAAP in the “Accounting Principles Rule” [2.320.001] means those accounting principles promulgated by bodies designated by Council, which are listed in appendix A. The bodies designated by Council to promulgate accounting principles are

a. FASAB,

b. FASB,

c. GASB, and

d. IASB.

.02 Financial statements prepared pursuant to other accounting principles would be considered financial reporting frameworks other than GAAP within the context of the “Accounting Principles Rule” [2.320.001].

.03 However, the “Accounting Principles Rule” [2.320.001] does not preclude a member from preparing or reporting on financial statements that have been prepared pursuant to financial reporting frameworks other than GAAP, such as

a. financial reporting frameworks generally accepted in another country, including jurisdictional variations of IFRS such that the entity’s financial statements do not meet the requirements for full compliance with IFRS, as promulgated by the IASB;

b. financial reporting frameworks prescribed by an agreement or a contract; or
c. other special purpose frameworks, including statutory financial reporting provisions required by law or a U.S. or foreign governmental regulatory body to whose jurisdiction the entity is subject.

.04 In such circumstances, however, the financial statements or member’s reports thereon should not purport that the financial statements are in accordance with GAAP and the financial statements or reports on those financial statements, or both, should clarify the financial reporting framework(s) used. [Prior reference: paragraph .06 of ET section 203]

2.400 Acts Discreditable

2.400.001 Acts Discreditable Rule

.01 A member shall not commit an act discreditable to the profession. [Prior reference: paragraph .01 of ET section 501]

Interpretations Under the Acts Discreditable Rule

2.400.005 Application of the Conceptual Framework for Members in Business and Ethical Conflicts

.01 In the absence of an interpretation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [2.400.001] that addresses a particular relationship or circumstance, a member should apply the “Conceptual Framework for Members in Business” [2.000.010].

.02 A member would be considered in violation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [2.400.001] if the member cannot demonstrate that safeguards were applied that eliminated or reduced significant threats to an acceptable level.

.03 A member should consider the guidance in “Ethical Conflicts” [2.000.020] when addressing ethical conflicts that may arise when the member encounters obstacles to follow an appropriate course of action. Such obstacles may be due to internal or external pressures or to conflicts in applying relevant professional standards or legal standards, or both. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.04 Paragraphs .01 and .02 are effective December 15, 2015 and early implementation is allowed. Paragraph .03 is effective December 15, 2014.

2.400.010 Discrimination and Harassment in Employment Practices

.01 A member would be presumed to have committed an act discreditable to the profession, in violation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [2.400.001] if a final determination, no longer subject to appeal, is made by a court or an administrative agency of competent jurisdiction that a member has violated any antidiscrimination laws of the United States, state, or municipality, including those related to sexual and other forms of harassment. [Prior reference: paragraph .03 of ET section 501]

2.400.020 Solicitation or Disclosure of CPA Examination Questions and Answers

.01 A member who solicits or knowingly discloses the Uniform CPA Examination question(s) or answer(s), or both, without the AICPA’s written authorization shall be considered to have committed an act discreditable to the profession, in violation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [2.400.001]. [Prior reference: paragraph .07 of ET section 501]

2.400.030 Failure to File a Tax Return or Pay a Tax Liability

.01 A member who fails to comply with applicable federal, state, or local laws or regulations regarding (a) the timely filing of the member’s personal tax returns or tax returns for the member’s employer that the
member has the authority to timely file or (b) the timely remittance of all payroll and other taxes collected on behalf of others may be considered to have committed an act discreditable to the profession, in violation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [2.400.001]. [Prior reference: paragraph .08 of ET section 501]

2.400.040 Negligence in the Preparation of Financial Statements or Records

.01 A member shall be considered in violation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [2.400.001] if the member, by virtue of his or her negligence, does any of the following:

a. Makes, or permits or directs another to make, materially false and misleading entries in the financial statements or records of an entity.

b. Fails to correct an entity’s financial statements that are materially false and misleading when the member has the authority to record an entry.

c. Signs, or permits or directs another to sign, a document containing materially false and misleading information. [Prior reference: paragraph .05 of ET section 501]

2.400.050 Governmental Bodies, Commissions, or Other Regulatory Agencies

.01 Many governmental bodies, commissions, or other regulatory agencies have established requirements, such as standards, guides, rules, and regulations, that members are required to follow in the preparation of financial statements or related information. For example, the SEC, the Federal Communications Commission, state insurance commissions, and other regulatory agencies have established such requirements.

.02 If a member prepares financial statements or related information (for example, management’s discussion and analysis) for purposes of reporting to such bodies, commissions, or regulatory agencies, the member should follow the requirements of such organizations in addition to the applicable financial reporting framework.

.03 A member’s material departure from such requirements would be considered a violation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [2.400.001] unless the member discloses in the financial statements or related information that such requirements were not followed and the applicable reasons. [Prior reference: paragraph .06 of ET section 501]

2.400.060 Indemnification and Limitation of Liability Provisions

.01 Certain governmental bodies, commissions, or other regulatory agencies (collectively, regulators) have established requirements through laws, regulations, or published interpretations that

a. prohibit entities subject to their regulation (regulated entity) from including certain types of indemnification and limitation of liability provisions in agreements for the performance of audit or other attest services that are required by such regulators; or

b. provide that the existence of such provisions disqualifies a member from rendering such services to these entities.

For example, federal banking regulators, state insurance commissions, and the SEC have established such requirements.

.02 If a member enters into, or directs or knowingly permits another individual to enter into, a contract for the performance of audit or other attest services that are subject to the requirements of these regulators, the member should not include, or knowingly permit or direct another individual to include, an indemnification or limitation of liability provision that would cause the regulated entity or a member to be in violation of such requirements or disqualify a member from providing such services to the regulated entity. A member
who enters into, or directs or knowingly permits another individual to enter into, such an agreement for the
performance of audit or other attest services would be considered in violation of the “Acts Discreditable
Rule” [2.400.001]. [Prior reference: paragraph .09 of ET section 501]

2.400.070 Confidential Information Obtained From Employment or Volunteer Activities

A member should maintain the confidentiality of his or her employer’s confidential information and
should not use or disclose any confidential employer information obtained as a result of an employment
relationship, such as discussions with the employer’s vendors, customers, or lenders (for example, any
confidential information pertaining to a current or previous employer, subsidiary, affiliate, or parent
thereof, as well as any entities for which the member is working in a volunteer capacity).

For purposes of this interpretation, confidential employer information is any proprietary information
pertaining to the employer or any organization for whom the member may work in a volunteer capacity
that is not known to be available to the public and is obtained as a result of such relationships.

A member should be alert to the possibility of inadvertent disclosure, particularly to a close business
associate or close relative or immediate family member. The member should also take reasonable steps to
ensure that staff under his or her control or others within the employing organization and persons from
whom advice and assistance are obtained are aware of the confidential nature of the information.

When a member changes employment, a member should not use confidential employer information
acquired as a result of a prior employment relationship to his or her personal advantage or the advantage of
a third party, such as a current or prospective employer. The requirement to maintain the confidentiality of
an employer’s confidential information continues even after the end of the relationship between a member
and the employer. However, the member is entitled to use experience and expertise gained through prior
employment relationships.

A member would be considered in violation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [2.400.001] if the member
discloses or uses any confidential employer information acquired as a result of employment or volunteer
relationships without the proper authority or specific consent of the employer or organization for whom
the member may work in a volunteer capacity, unless there is a legal or professional responsibility to use
or disclose such information.

The following are examples of situations in which members are permitted or may be required to disclose
confidential employer information or when such disclosure may be appropriate:

a. Disclosure is permitted by law and authorized by the employer.

b. Disclosure is required by law, for example, to

   i. comply with a validly issued and enforceable subpoena or summons or

   ii. inform the appropriate public authorities of violations of law that have been discovered.

c. There is a professional responsibility or right to disclose information, when not prohibited by law, to

   i. initiate a complaint with, or respond to any inquiry made by, the Professional Ethics Division
      or trial board of the AICPA or a duly constituted investigative or disciplinary body of a state
      CPA society, board of accountancy, or other regulatory body;

   ii. protect the member’s professional interests in legal proceedings;

   iii. comply with professional standards and other ethics requirements; or

   iv. report potential concerns regarding questionable accounting, auditing, or other matters to the
       employer’s confidential complaint hotline or those charged with governance.
Part 2 — Members in Business

d. Disclosure is permitted on behalf of the employer to

i. obtain financing with lenders;

ii. communicate with vendors, clients, and customers; or

iii. communicate with the employer’s external accountant, attorneys, regulators, and other business professionals.

.07 In deciding whether to disclose confidential employer information, relevant factors to consider include the following:

a. Whether all the relevant information is known and substantiated to the extent that it is practicable.
   When the situation involves unsubstantiated facts, incomplete information, or unsubstantiated conclusions, the member should use professional judgment in determining the type of disclosure to be made, if any.

b. Whether the parties to whom the communication may be addressed are appropriate recipients.

.08 A member may wish to consult with his or her legal counsel prior to disclosing, or determining whether to disclose, confidential employer information.

.09 Refer to the “Subordination of Judgment” interpretation [2.130.020] of the “Integrity and Objectivity Rule” [2.100.001] for additional guidance. [Prior reference: paragraph .10 of ET section 501]

2.400.090 False, Misleading, or Deceptive Acts in Promoting or Marketing Professional Services

.01 A member would be in violation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [2.400.001] if the member promotes or markets the member’s abilities to provide professional services or makes claims about the member’s experience or qualifications in a manner that is false, misleading, or deceptive.

.02 Promotional efforts would be false, misleading, or deceptive if they contain any claim or representation that would likely cause a reasonable person to be misled or deceived. This includes any representation about CPA licensure or any other professional certification or accreditation that is not in compliance with the requirements of the relevant licensing authority or designating body. [Prior reference: paragraph .11 of ET section 501]

2.400.100 Use of the CPA Credential

.01 A member should refer to applicable state accountancy laws and board of accountancy rules and regulations for guidance regarding the use of the CPA credential. A member who fails to follow the accountancy laws, rules, and regulations on use of the CPA credential in any of the jurisdictions in which the CPA practices would be considered to have used the CPA credential in a manner that is false, misleading, or deceptive and in violation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [2.400.001]. [Prior reference: paragraph .12 of ET section 501].
Part 3

Other Members

3.000 Introduction

.01 Part 3 of the Code of Professional Conduct (the code) applies to members who are not in public practice and are not members in business. Accordingly, when the term member is used in part 3 of the code, the requirements apply only to such members. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.02 Effective December 15, 2014.

3.000.030 Applicability

.01 Part 3 of the code applies to members who are neither members in public practice nor members in business, for example members who are retired or not currently employed. These members are subject to the "Acts Discreditable Rule" [3.400.001]. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.02 Effective December 15, 2014.

3.400 Acts Discreditable

3.400.001 Acts Discreditable Rule

.01 A member shall not commit an act discreditable to the profession. [Prior reference: paragraph .01 of ET section 501]

Interpretations Under the Acts Discreditable Rule

3.400.010 Discrimination and Harassment in Employment Practices

.01 A member would be presumed to have committed an act discreditable to the profession, in violation of the “Acts Discreditable Rule” [3.400.001] if a final determination, no longer subject to appeal, is made by a court or an administrative agency of competent jurisdiction that a member has violated any antidiscrimination laws of the United States, state, or municipality, including those related to sexual and other forms of harassment. [Prior reference: paragraph .03 of ET section 501]

3.400.020 Solicitation or Disclosure of CPA Examination Questions and Answers

.01 A member who solicits or knowingly discloses the Uniform CPA Examination question(s) or answer(s), or both, without the AICPA’s written authorization shall be considered to have committed an act discreditable to the profession, in violation of the "Acts Discreditable Rule" [3.400.001]. [Prior reference: paragraph .07 of ET section 501]

3.400.030 Failure to File a Tax Return or Pay a Tax Liability

.01 A member who fails to comply with applicable federal, state, or local laws or regulations regarding (a) the timely filing of the member’s personal tax returns or (b) the timely remittance of all payroll and other taxes collected on behalf of others may be considered to have committed an act discreditable to the profession, in violation of the "Acts Discreditable Rule" [3.400.001]. [Prior reference: paragraph .08 of ET section 501]
3.400.070 Confidential Information Obtained From Former Employment or Previous Volunteer Activities

.01 A member should maintain the confidentiality of his or her former employer’s confidential information and should not use or disclose any confidential employer information obtained as a result of an employment relationship, such as discussions with the employer’s vendors, customers, or lenders (for example, any confidential information pertaining to a previous employer, subsidiary, affiliate, or parent thereof, as well as any entities for which the member worked in a volunteer capacity).

.02 For purposes of this interpretation, confidential employer information is any proprietary information pertaining to the former employer or any organization for whom the member may have worked in a volunteer capacity that is not known to be available to the public and is obtained as a result of such relationships.

.03 A member should be alert to the possibility of inadvertent disclosure, particularly to a close business associate or close relative or immediate family member.

.04 A member should not use confidential employer information acquired as a result of a prior employment relationship to his or her personal advantage or the advantage of a third party, such as a current or prospective employer. The requirement to maintain the confidentiality of an employer’s confidential information continues even after the end of the relationship between a member and the employer. However, the member is entitled to use experience and expertise gained through prior employment relationships.

.05 A member would be considered in violation of the "Acts Discreditable Rule" [3.400.001] if the member discloses or uses any confidential employer information acquired as a result of former employment or volunteer relationships without the proper authority or specific consent of the former employer or organization for whom the member may work in a volunteer capacity, unless there is a legal or professional responsibility to use or disclose such information.

.06 The following are examples of situations in which members are permitted or may be required to disclose confidential employer information or when such disclosure may be appropriate:

   a. Disclosure is permitted by law and authorized by the former employer.

   b. Disclosure is required by law, for example, to

      i. comply with a validly issued and enforceable subpoena or summons or

      ii. inform the appropriate public authorities of violations of law that have been discovered.

   c. There is a professional responsibility or right to disclose information, when not prohibited by law, to

      i. initiate a complaint with, or respond to any inquiry made by, the Professional Ethics Division or trial board of the AICPA or a duly constituted investigative or disciplinary body of a state CPA society, board of accountancy, or other regulatory body;

      ii. protect the member’s professional interests in legal proceedings;

      iii. comply with professional standards and other ethics requirements; or

      iv. report potential concerns regarding questionable accounting, auditing, or other matters to the former employer’s confidential complaint hotline or those charged with governance.

   d. Disclosure is permitted on behalf of the former employer to

      i. obtain financing with lenders;
ii. communicate with vendors, clients, and customers; or

iii. communicate with the former employer’s external accountant, attorneys, regulators, and other business professionals.

.07 In deciding whether to disclose confidential employer information, relevant factors to consider include the following:

a. Whether all the relevant information is known and substantiated to the extent that it is practicable. When the situation involves unsubstantiated facts, incomplete information, or unsubstantiated conclusions, the member should use professional judgment in determining the type of disclosure to be made, if any.

b. Whether the parties to whom the communication may be addressed are appropriate recipients.

.08 A member may wish to consult with his or her legal counsel prior to disclosing, or determining whether to disclose, confidential employer information. [Prior reference: paragraph .10 of ET section 501]

3.400.090 False, Misleading, or Deceptive Acts in Promoting or Marketing Services

.01 A member would be in violation of the "Acts Discreditable Rule" [3.400.001] if the member promotes or markets the member’s abilities to provide services or makes claims about the member’s experience or qualifications in a manner that is false, misleading, or deceptive.

.02 Promotional efforts would be false, misleading, or deceptive if they contain any claim or representation that would likely cause a reasonable person to be misled or deceived. This includes any representation about CPA licensure or any other professional certification or accreditation that is not in compliance with the requirements of the relevant licensing authority or designating body. [No prior reference: new content]

Effective Date

.03 Effective December 15, 2014.

3.400.100 Use of the CPA Credential

.01 A member should refer to applicable state accountancy laws and board of accountancy rules and regulations for guidance regarding the use of the CPA credential. A member who fails to follow the accountancy laws, rules, and regulations on use of the CPA credential in any of the jurisdictions in which the CPA practices would be considered to have used the CPA credential in a manner that is false, misleading, or deceptive and in violation of the " Acts Discreditable Rule" [3.400.001]. [Prior reference: paragraph .12 of ET section 501]
Appendix A

Council Resolution Designating Bodies to Promulgate Technical Standards


Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board

RESOLVED: That the Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board, with respect to its statements of federal accounting standards and concepts adopted and issued in March of 1993 and subsequently, in accordance with its rules of procedure, the memorandum of understanding, and public notice designating FASAB’s standards and concepts as having substantial authoritative support, be, and hereby is, designated by the Council of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants as the body to establish financial accounting principles for federal governmental entities pursuant to the “Accounting Principles Rule” (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 1.320.001 and 2.320.001) of the Code.¹

[Added by Council October 1999.]

Financial Accounting Standards Board

WHEREAS: In 1959 the Council designated the Accounting Principles Board to establish accounting principles, and

WHEREAS: The Council is advised that the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) has become operational, it is

RESOLVED: That as of the date hereof the FASB, in respect of statements of financial accounting standards finally adopted by such board in accordance with its rules of procedure and the bylaws of the Financial Accounting Foundation, be, and hereby is, designated by this Council as the body to establish accounting principles pursuant to the “Accounting Principles Rule,” (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 1.320.001 and 2.320.001) and standards on disclosure of financial information for such entities outside financial statements in published financial reports containing financial statements under the “Compliance With Standards Rule” (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 1.310.001 and 2.310.001) of the Code of Professional Conduct of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants provided, however, any accounting research bulletins, or opinions of the accounting principles board issued or approved for exposure by the accounting principles board prior to April 1, 1973, and finally adopted by such board on or before June 30, 1973, shall constitute statements of accounting principles promulgated by a body designated by Council as contemplated in the “Accounting Principles Rule” (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 1.320.001 and 2.320.001) of the Code unless and until such time as they are expressly superseded by action of the FASB.¹

Governmental Accounting Standards Board

WHEREAS: The Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB) has been established by the board of trustees of the Financial Accounting Foundation (FAF) to issue standards of financial accounting and reporting with respect to activities and transactions of state and local governmental entities, and

WHEREAS: The American Institute of Certified Public Accountants is a signatory to the agreement creating the GASB as an arm of the FAF and has supported the GASB professionally and financially, it is

RESOLVED: That as of the date hereof, the GASB, with respect to statements of governmental accounting standards adopted and issued in July 1984 and subsequently, in accordance with its rules of procedure and the bylaws of the

¹The changes to this appendix as of December 15, 2014, are administrative changes that were made to conform to the reformatted Code of Professional Conduct.
Appendix A — Council Resolution Designating Bodies to Promulgate Technical Standards

FAF, be, and hereby is, designated by the Council of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants as the body to establish financial accounting principles for state and local governmental entities, pursuant to the “Accounting Principles Rule” (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 1.320.001 and 2.320.001) of the Code of Professional Conduct, and standards on disclosure of financial information for such entities outside financial statements in published financial reports containing financial statements under the “Compliance With Standards Rule” (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 1.310.001 and 2.310.001) of the Code of Professional Conduct.¹

Public Company Accounting Oversight Board

WHEREAS: The Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB) has been established pursuant to the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (the Act), and

WHEREAS: The PCAOB has authority under the Act to establish or adopt, or both, by PCAOB rule, auditing and related attestation standards, quality control, ethics, independence and other standards relating to the preparation and issuance of audit reports for issuers as defined in the Act.

RESOLVED: That the PCAOB be, and hereby is, designated by the Council of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants as the body to establish standards relating to the preparation and issuance of audit reports for entities within its jurisdiction as defined by the Act pursuant to the “General Standards Rule” (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 1.300.001) and the “Compliance With Standards Rule” (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 1.310.001) of the Code of Professional Conduct.¹

[Added by Council May 2004.]

International Accounting Standards Board

WHEREAS, At its Spring, 2008 meeting, the Council resolved that the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) be designated as the body which is authorized to establish professional standards with regard to international accounting and reporting principles under the “Compliance With Standards Rule” (ET sec. 1.310.001 and 2.310.001) and the “Accounting Principles Rule” (ET sec. 1.320.001 and 2.320.001) of the Code of Professional Conduct, with the proviso that Council would, three to five years after such designation, reassess whether continued recognition of the IASB for such purposes is appropriate, and readopted that resolution in May 2013, and

[Added by Council May 19, 2013; amended May 20, 2018.]

WHEREAS, The Council supports the IASB and believes recognition of the IASB as the body authorized to establish professional standards with regard to international accounting and reporting principles under the “Compliance With Standards Rule” (ET sec. 1.310.001 and 2.310.001) and the “Accounting Principles Rule” (ET sec. 1.320.001 and 2.320.001) of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct should continue; and

[Added by Council May 19, 2013; readopted by Council, May 20, 2018.]

WHEREAS, The Council also believes it should again reassess such recognition three to five years after the effective date of this resolution; now

[Added by Council May 19, 2013; readopted by Council, May 20, 2018.]

BE IT RESOLVED, That the Council hereby readopts the resolutions related to the IASB set out in Appendix A to the Code of Professional Conduct as set out below.

[Added by Council May 19 2013; readopted by Council, May 20, 2018.]

RESOLVED: That the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) is hereby designated as the body to establish professional standards with respect to international financial accounting and reporting principles pursuant to the “Compliance With Standards Rule” (ET sec. 1.310.001 and 2.310.001) and the “Accounting Principles Rule” (ET sec. 1.320.001 and 2.320.001) of the Code of Professional Conduct; and
BE IT FURTHER RESOLVED: That the Council shall reassess, no sooner than three years but no later than five years after the effective date of this resolution, whether continued recognition of the IASB as the body designated to establish professional standards with respect to international financial accounting and reporting principles under the “Compliance With Standards Rule” (ET sec. 1.310.001 and 2.310.001) and the “Accounting Principles Rule” (ET sec. 1.320.001 and 2.320.001) of the Code of Professional Conduct is appropriate.¹

[Added by Council May 18, 2008; readopted by Council, May 19, 2013 and May 20, 2018.]

AICPA COMMITTEES AND BOARDS

WHEREAS: The membership of the Institute has adopted the “General Standards Rule” (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 1.300.001 and 2.300.001) of the Code of Professional Conduct, which authorizes the Council to designate bodies to promulgate technical standards with which members must comply, and therefore it is¹

Accounting and Review Services Committee

RESOLVED: That the AICPA accounting and review services committee is hereby designated to promulgate standards under the “General Standards Rule” (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 1.300.001) and the “Compliance With Standards Rule” (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 1.310.001) of the Code of Professional Conduct with respect to unaudited financial statements or other unaudited financial information of an entity that is not required to file financial statements with a regulatory agency in connection with the sale or trading of its securities in a public market.¹

Auditing Standards Board

RESOLVED: That, with respect to standards relating to the preparation and issuance of audit reports not included within the resolution on the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, the AICPA auditing standards board is hereby designated as the body authorized under the “General Standards Rule” (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 1.300.001) and the “Compliance With Standards Rule” (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 1.310.001) of the Code of Professional Conduct to promulgate auditing, attestation, and quality control standards and procedures.

RESOLVED: That the auditing standards board shall establish under statements on auditing standards, the responsibilities of members with respect to standards for disclosure of financial information outside of the financial statements in published financial reports containing financial statements.¹

[Revised May 2004.]

Management Consulting Services Executive Committee

RESOLVED: That the AICPA management consulting services executive committee is hereby designated to promulgate standards under the “General Standards Rule” (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 1.300.001 and 2.300.001) and the “Compliance With Standards Rule” (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 1.310.001 and 2.310.001) of the Code of Professional Conduct with respect to the offering of management consulting services, provided, however, that such standards do not deal with the broad question of what, if any, services should be proscribed.

AND FURTHER RESOLVED: That any Institute committee or board now or in the future authorized by the Council to issue enforceable standards under the “General Standards Rule” (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 1.300.001 and 2.300.001) and the “Compliance With Standards Rule” (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 1.310.001 and 2.310.001) of the Code of Professional Conduct must observe an exposure process seeking comment from other affected committees and boards, as well as the general membership.¹

[Revised April 1992.]

Attestation Standards
RESOLVED: That the AICPA accounting and review services committee, auditing standards board, and management consulting services executive committee are hereby designated as bodies authorized under the “General Standards Rule” (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 1.300.001) and the “Compliance With Standards Rule” (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 1.310.001) of the Code of Professional Conduct to promulgate attestation standards in their respective areas of responsibility.¹

[Added by Council, May 1988; revised April 1992.]

Tax Executive Committee

RESOLVED: That the Tax Executive Committee is hereby designated as the body authorized under the “General Standards Rule” (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 1.300.001 and 2.300.001) and the “Compliance With Standards Rule” (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 1.310.001 and 2.310.001) of the Code of Professional Conduct to promulgate professional practice standards with respect to tax services.¹

[Added by Council, October 1999.]

Forensic and Valuation Services Executive Committee

RESOLVED: That the Forensic and Valuation Services Executive Committee is hereby designated as the body to promulgate professional standards with respect to forensic and valuation services under the “General Standards Rule” (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 1.300.001 and 2.300.001) and the “Compliance With Standards Rule” (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 1.310.001 and 2.310.001) of the Code of Professional Conduct.¹

[Added by Council, October 2007.]

Personal Financial Planning Executive Committee

RESOLVED: That the Personal Financial Planning Executive Committee is hereby designated as the body to promulgate professional standards with respect to personal financial planning services under the “General Standards Rule” (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 1.300.001 and 2.310.001) and the “Compliance With Standards Rule” (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 1.310.001 and 2.310.001) of the Code of Professional Conduct.¹

[Added by Council, October 2012.]
Appendix B

Council Resolution Concerning the Form of Organization and Name Rule


A. RESOLVED: That with respect to a member engaged in public practice in a firm or organization which performs (1) any audit or other engagement performed in accordance with the Statements on Auditing Standards, (2) any review of a financial statement performed in accordance with the Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services, (3) any examination of prospective financial information performed in accordance with the Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements, (4) any engagement to be performed in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB), or (5) any examination, review, or agreed upon procedures engagement to be performed in accordance with the SSAE, other than an examination described in subsection (A) (3), or which holds itself out as a firm of certified public accountants or uses the term “certified public accountant(s)” or the designation “CPA” in connection with its name, the characteristics of such a firm or organization under the “Form of Organization and Name Rule” (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 1.800.001) of the Code of Professional Conduct are as set forth below:

1. A majority of the ownership of the member’s firm in terms of financial interests and voting rights must belong to CPAs. Any non-CPA owner would have to be actively engaged as a member of the firm or its affiliates. Ownership by investors or commercial enterprises not actively engaged as members of the firm or its affiliates is against the public interest and continues to be prohibited.

2. There must be a CPA who has ultimate responsibility for all the services described in A above, compilation services and other engagements governed by Statements on Auditing Standards or Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services, and non-CPA owners could not assume ultimate responsibility for any such services or engagements.

3. Non-CPA owners would be permitted to use the title “principal,” “owner,” “officer,” “member” or “shareholder” or any other title permitted by state law, but not hold themselves out to be CPAs.

4. A member shall not knowingly permit a person, whom the member has the authority or capacity to control, to carry out on his or her behalf, either with or without compensation, acts which, if carried out by the member, would place the member in violation of the rules. Further, a member may be held responsible for the acts of all persons associated with him or her in the public practice whom the member has the authority or capacity to control.

5. Owners shall at all times own their equity in their own right and shall be the beneficial owners of the equity capital ascribed to them. Provision would have to be made for the ownership to be transferred, within a reasonable period of time, to the firm or to other qualified owners if the owner ceases to be actively engaged in the firm or its affiliates.

6. Non-CPA owners would not be eligible for regular membership in the AICPA, unless they meet the requirements in BL section 2.2.1.

B. RESOLVED: The characteristics of all other firms or organizations are deemed to be whatever is legally permissible under applicable law or regulation, except as otherwise provided in paragraph C below.

C. RESOLVED: That with respect to a member engaged in public practice in a firm or organization which is not within the description of a firm or organization set forth in paragraph A above, but who performs compilations of financial statements performed in accordance with the Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services, the characteristics of such a firm or organization under the “Form of Organization and Name Rule” of the Code are as set forth below.

1. There must be a CPA who has ultimate responsibility for any financial statement compilation services provided by the firm and by each business unit performing such compilation services and non-CPA owners could not assume ultimate responsibility for any such services.
2. Any compilation report must be signed individually by a CPA, and may not be signed in the name of the firm or organization.
Appendix C

Revision History Table

Revisions made to the Code of Professional Conduct subsequent to June 1, 2014, appear below in the Revision History Table. In addition to identifying the numeric citation for the change, the effective date is identified and a link to the marked version of the content is provided when available. If the revision changes guidance that is already authoritative, the action taken (see “Action” column) will be identified as “revised.” If the revision is new guidance, the action taken will be identified as “added.”

The “New and Revised Interpretations and Other Guidance” [0.600.010] section and the “Pending Interpretations and Other Guidance” [0.600.020] section provide a listing of current activity.
## Appendix C — Revision History Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Citation</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Effective Date</th>
<th>Official Release</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.120.010</td>
<td>Revised August 2022</td>
<td>December 31, 2022</td>
<td><a href="https://us.aicpa.org/content/dam/aicpa/interestareas/professionalethics/community/exposuredrafts/downloadabledocuments/2022/officers-directors-beneficial-owners-final.pdf">https://us.aicpa.org/content/dam/aicpa/interestareas/professionalethics/community/exposuredrafts/downloadabledocuments/2022/officers-directors-beneficial-owners-final.pdf</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Appendix C — Revision History Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Effective Date</th>
<th>Document URL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.400.06</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>December 31, 2022</td>
<td></td>
<td><a href="https://us.aicpa.org/content/dam/aicpa/interestareas/professionalethics/community/exposuredrafts/downloadabledocuments/2021/56175896-2022finalloans.pdf">https://us.aicpa.org/content/dam/aicpa/interestareas/professionalethics/community/exposuredrafts/downloadabledocuments/2021/56175896-2022finalloans.pdf</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.600.030.03</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>December 2021</td>
<td>Effective November 16, 2021</td>
<td><a href="https://us.aicpa.org/content/dam/aicpa/interestareas/professionalethics/community/exposuredrafts/downloadabledocuments/2021/2021novemberofficialreleasetemporarypolicystatement.pdf">https://us.aicpa.org/content/dam/aicpa/interestareas/professionalethics/community/exposuredrafts/downloadabledocuments/2021/2021novemberofficialreleasetemporarypolicystatement.pdf</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revision History Table</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Change Type</td>
<td>Effective Date</td>
<td>Details</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.200.030</td>
<td>Retain Prior Code References and Appendix D</td>
<td>February 12, 2019</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.295.143</td>
<td>Revised Effective Date</td>
<td>Effective July 1, 2019</td>
<td>The <em>Journal of Accountancy</em> posted an online news story on August 14, 2018.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Appendix C — Revision History Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Revision</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Effective Date</th>
<th>URL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.400.03</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>Effective December 31, 2017</td>
<td><a href="https://us.aicpa.org/content/dam/aicpa/interestareas/professionalethics/community/exposedrafts/downloadeddocuments/2017/2017-december-official-releases.pdf">https://us.aicpa.org/content/dam/aicpa/interestareas/professionalethics/community/exposedrafts/downloadeddocuments/2017/2017-december-official-releases.pdf</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.400.07</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>Effective December 31, 2017</td>
<td><a href="https://us.aicpa.org/content/dam/aicpa/interestareas/professionalethics/community/exposedrafts/downloadeddocuments/2017/2017-december-official-releases.pdf">https://us.aicpa.org/content/dam/aicpa/interestareas/professionalethics/community/exposedrafts/downloadeddocuments/2017/2017-december-official-releases.pdf</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.400.26</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>Effective December 31, 2017</td>
<td><a href="https://us.aicpa.org/content/dam/aicpa/interestareas/professionalethics/community/exposedrafts/downloadeddocuments/2017/2017-december-official-releases.pdf">https://us.aicpa.org/content/dam/aicpa/interestareas/professionalethics/community/exposedrafts/downloadeddocuments/2017/2017-december-official-releases.pdf</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.400.27</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>Effective December 31, 2017</td>
<td><a href="https://us.aicpa.org/content/dam/aicpa/interestareas/professionalethics/community/exposedrafts/downloadeddocuments/2017/2017-december-official-releases.pdf">https://us.aicpa.org/content/dam/aicpa/interestareas/professionalethics/community/exposedrafts/downloadeddocuments/2017/2017-december-official-releases.pdf</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.400.39</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>Effective December 31, 2017</td>
<td><a href="https://us.aicpa.org/content/dam/aicpa/interestareas/professionalethics/community/exposedrafts/downloadeddocuments/2017/2017-december-official-releases.pdf">https://us.aicpa.org/content/dam/aicpa/interestareas/professionalethics/community/exposedrafts/downloadeddocuments/2017/2017-december-official-releases.pdf</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.400.41</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>Effective December 31, 2017</td>
<td><a href="https://us.aicpa.org/content/dam/aicpa/interestareas/professionalethics/community/exposedrafts/downloadeddocuments/2017/2017-december-official-releases.pdf">https://us.aicpa.org/content/dam/aicpa/interestareas/professionalethics/community/exposedrafts/downloadeddocuments/2017/2017-december-official-releases.pdf</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Appendix C  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Revision History</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Appendix C
### Revision History Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Effective Date</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Appendix C  
| Revision History |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| Appendix C  
Revision History |  |
|-------------------|---|
| 1.275.025 paragraphs .01–.06 Revised April 2015 | April 30, 2015  
| 1.224.010 paragraphs .05–.09 Revised April 2015 | April 30, 2015  
| 0.400.03 Revised April 2015 | April 30, 2015  
| 1.298.010 Added January 2015 | March 31, 2016, early implementation allowed  
| 1.298 Added January 2015 | March 31, 2016, early implementation allowed  
| 0.200.020.06–.07 Revised January 2015 | March 31, 2016, early implementation allowed  
| Appendix B Revised October 2014 | October 19, 2014  
| 2.110.010 Revised June 2014 | September 30, 2014  
### Appendix C
#### Revision History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Revision</th>
<th>Revised Date</th>
<th>Date of Latest Revision</th>
<th>URL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Appendix D

Mapping Document

[As of December 31, 2013]

On June 1, 2014, the AICPA issued a codification of the code’s principles, rules, interpretations and rulings (revised code). To assist users in understanding where the content from the prior code appears in the revised code, this mapping document was created. The first two columns identify the citation and title where the content resided in the prior code and the second two columns identify the citation and title where the content now resides in the revised code. The "Prior Code Citations" box has been left blank where the content did not exist in the prior code and is new to the revised code. "New Titles" that appear in regular roman text are effective December 15, 2014, in bold italic December 15, 2015, and in italic have components that are effective both December 15, 2014, and December 15, 2015.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prior Code Citations</th>
<th>Title in Prior Code</th>
<th>New Citation</th>
<th>New Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.100</td>
<td></td>
<td>Overview of the Code of Professional Conduct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>Composition, Applicability, and Compliance</td>
<td>0.100.010</td>
<td>Principles and Rules of Conduct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>Other Guidance</td>
<td>0.100.020</td>
<td>Interpretations and Other Guidance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 91</td>
<td>Applicability</td>
<td>0.200.010</td>
<td>Structure of the AICPA Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.200.020.01</td>
<td>Application of the AICPA Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 91</td>
<td>Applicability</td>
<td>0.200.020.02–05</td>
<td>Application of the AICPA Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.200.030</td>
<td>Citations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.200.040</td>
<td>Transition Provisions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.200.050</td>
<td>Drafting Conventions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 51</td>
<td>Preamble</td>
<td>0.300.010</td>
<td>Preamble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 52</td>
<td>Article I — Responsibilities</td>
<td>0.300.020</td>
<td>Responsibilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 53</td>
<td>Article II — The Public Interest</td>
<td>0.300.030</td>
<td>The Public Interest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 54</td>
<td>Article III — Integrity</td>
<td>0.300.040</td>
<td>Integrity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 55</td>
<td>Article IV — Objectivity and Independence</td>
<td>0.300.050</td>
<td>Objectivity and Independence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 56</td>
<td>Article V — Due Care</td>
<td>0.300.060</td>
<td>Due Care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 57</td>
<td>Article VI — Scope and Nature of Services</td>
<td>0.300.070</td>
<td>Scope and Nature of Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92</td>
<td>Definitions</td>
<td>0.400</td>
<td>Definitions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior Code Citations</td>
<td>Title in Prior Code</td>
<td>New Citation</td>
<td>New Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 100-1</td>
<td>Conceptual Framework for AICPA Independence Standards — Introduction</td>
<td>0.400.01</td>
<td>Acceptable level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.400.01</td>
<td>Acceptable level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.20</td>
<td>Application of the Independence Rules to Affiliates — Definitions</td>
<td>0.400.02</td>
<td>Affiliate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.400.03</td>
<td>Attest Client</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.01</td>
<td>Attest engagement</td>
<td>0.400.04</td>
<td>Attest Engagement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.02</td>
<td>Attest engagement team</td>
<td>0.400.05</td>
<td>Attest Engagement Team</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.17</td>
<td>Financial Relationships — Definitions</td>
<td>0.400.06</td>
<td>Beneficially Owned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.03</td>
<td>Client</td>
<td>0.400.07</td>
<td>Client</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.04</td>
<td>Close relative</td>
<td>0.400.08</td>
<td>Close Relative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.05</td>
<td>Confidential Client Information</td>
<td>0.400.09</td>
<td>Confidential Client Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Various locations</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.400.10</td>
<td>Control (s) (led)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.06</td>
<td>Council</td>
<td>0.400.11</td>
<td>Council</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.07</td>
<td>Covered Member</td>
<td>0.400.12</td>
<td>Covered Member</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.17</td>
<td>Financial Relationships — Definitions</td>
<td>0.400.13</td>
<td>Direct financial interest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.400.14</td>
<td>Employing organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.17</td>
<td>Financial Relationships — Definitions</td>
<td>0.400.15</td>
<td>Financial interest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.20</td>
<td>Application of the Independence Rules to Affiliates — Definitions</td>
<td>0.400.16</td>
<td>Financial statement attest client</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.10</td>
<td>Financial statements</td>
<td>0.400.17</td>
<td>Financial statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior Code Citations</td>
<td>Title in Prior Code</td>
<td>New Citation</td>
<td>New Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.11</td>
<td>Firm</td>
<td>0.400.18</td>
<td>Firm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.13</td>
<td>Immediate family</td>
<td>0.400.19</td>
<td>Immediate family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 100-1 paragraph .09</td>
<td>Conceptual Framework for AICPA Independence Standards — Definitions</td>
<td>0.400.20</td>
<td>Impair(ed)(ing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 100-1 paragraphs .06–.08</td>
<td>Conceptual Framework for AICPA Independence Standards — Definitions</td>
<td>0.400.21</td>
<td>Independence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.17</td>
<td>Financial Relationships — Definitions</td>
<td>0.400.22</td>
<td>Indirect financial interest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.14</td>
<td>Individual in a position to influence the attest engagement</td>
<td>0.400.23</td>
<td>Individual in a position to influence the attest engagement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.15</td>
<td>Institute</td>
<td>0.400.24</td>
<td>Institute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.16</td>
<td>Interpretation of a rules of conduct</td>
<td>0.400.25</td>
<td>Interpretation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.17</td>
<td>Joint closely held investment</td>
<td>0.400.26</td>
<td>Joint Closely-Held Investments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.18</td>
<td>Key position</td>
<td>0.400.27</td>
<td>Key position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.09</td>
<td>Financial institution</td>
<td>0.400.28</td>
<td>Lending institution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.19</td>
<td>Loan</td>
<td>0.400.29</td>
<td>Loan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.20</td>
<td>Manager</td>
<td>0.400.30</td>
<td>Manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.21</td>
<td>Member</td>
<td>0.400.31</td>
<td>Member</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.22</td>
<td>Member in business</td>
<td>0.400.32</td>
<td>Member in business</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.23</td>
<td>Network</td>
<td>0.400.33</td>
<td>Network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.24</td>
<td>Network Firm</td>
<td>0.400.34</td>
<td>Network Firm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.25</td>
<td>Normal Lending Procedures, Terms, and Requirements</td>
<td>0.400.35</td>
<td>Normal lending procedures, terms, and requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior Code Citations</td>
<td>Title in Prior Code</td>
<td>New Citation</td>
<td>New Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.26</td>
<td>Office</td>
<td>0.400.36</td>
<td>Office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.27</td>
<td>Partner</td>
<td>0.400.37</td>
<td>Partner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.28</td>
<td>Partner Equivalents</td>
<td>0.400.38</td>
<td>Partner Equivalents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.29</td>
<td>Period of the professional engagement</td>
<td>0.400.39</td>
<td>Period of the professional engagement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.31</td>
<td>Professional services</td>
<td>0.400.40</td>
<td>Professional Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 100-1 paragraph .20</td>
<td>Conceptual Framework for AICPA Independence Standards — Definitions</td>
<td>0.400.41</td>
<td>Public interest entities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.30</td>
<td>Practice of public accounting</td>
<td>0.400.42</td>
<td>Public Practice (also referred to as the practice of public accounting)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 100-1 paragraph .20</td>
<td>Conceptual Framework for AICPA Independence Standards — Definitions</td>
<td>0.400.43</td>
<td>Safeguards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.02</td>
<td>Interpretation of Rule 101—Application of the Independence Rules to Covered Members Formerly Employed by a Client or Otherwise Associated with a Client</td>
<td>0.400.44</td>
<td>Share-based compensation arrangements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.32</td>
<td>Significant influence</td>
<td>0.400.45</td>
<td>Significant influence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.05</td>
<td>Performance of nonattest services — Management Responsibilities</td>
<td>0.400.46</td>
<td>Source Documents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.224–.225</td>
<td>Use of a Third-Party Service Provider to Assist a Member in Providing Professional Services</td>
<td>0.400.47</td>
<td>Third-party service provider</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 291.023–.024</td>
<td>Applicability of General and Technical Standards When Using a Third-Party Service Provider</td>
<td>0.400.47</td>
<td>Third-party service provider</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior Code Citations</td>
<td>Title in Prior Code</td>
<td>New Citation</td>
<td>New Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 391.001–.002</td>
<td>Use of a Third-Party Service Provider to Provide Professional Services to Clients or Administrative Support Services to the Member</td>
<td>0.400.47</td>
<td>Third-party service provider</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 92.33</td>
<td>Those Charged with Governance</td>
<td>0.400.48</td>
<td>Those Charged With Governance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.400.49</td>
<td>Threats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.500</td>
<td>Nonauthoritative Guidance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.600.010</td>
<td>New and Revised Interpretations and Other Guidance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.600.020</td>
<td>Pending Interpretations and Other Guidance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.700</td>
<td>Deleted Interpretations and Other Guidance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.000</td>
<td>Members in Public Practice — Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.000.010</td>
<td><strong>Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.000.020</td>
<td>Members in Public Practice—Ethical Conflicts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 102.01</td>
<td>Integrity and Objectivity</td>
<td>1.100.001</td>
<td>Integrity and Objectivity Rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.100.005</td>
<td><strong>Integrity and Objectivity Rule — Application of the Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice and the Ethical Conflicts</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 102.03</td>
<td>Conflicts of Interest</td>
<td>1.110.010</td>
<td>Conflicts of Interest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.186–.187</td>
<td>Service on Board of Directors of Federated Fund-Raising Organization</td>
<td>1.110.010.01j</td>
<td>Conflicts of Interest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.198–.199</td>
<td>Member Providing Services for Company Executives</td>
<td>1.110.010.01k</td>
<td>Conflicts of Interest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.220–.221</td>
<td>Member is Connected With an Entity That has a Loan to or From a Client</td>
<td>1.110.010.01l</td>
<td>Conflicts of Interest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.170–.171</td>
<td>Bank Director</td>
<td>1.110.020</td>
<td>Director Positions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.226–.227</td>
<td>Acceptance or Offering of Gifts or Entertainment</td>
<td>1.120.010</td>
<td>Offering or Accepting Gifts or Entertainment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior Code Citations</td>
<td>Title in Prior Code</td>
<td>New Citation</td>
<td>New Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 102.02</td>
<td>Knowing misrepresentations in the preparation of financial statements or records</td>
<td>1.130.010</td>
<td>Knowing Misrepresentations in the Preparation of Financial Statements or Records</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 102.05</td>
<td>Subordination of judgment by a member</td>
<td>1.130.020</td>
<td>Subordination of Judgment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 102.07</td>
<td>Professional Services involving client advocacy</td>
<td>1.140.010</td>
<td>Client Advocacy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.224–.225</td>
<td>Use of a Third-Party Service Provider to Assist a Member in Providing Professional Services</td>
<td>1.150.040</td>
<td>Use of a Third-Party Service Provider</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.01</td>
<td>Rule 101 — Independence</td>
<td>1.200.001</td>
<td>Independence Rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.02</td>
<td>Interpretation of Rule 101 — Other Considerations</td>
<td>1.200.005.01–.02</td>
<td>Application of the Conceptual Framework for Independence and Ethical Conflicts Interpretation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.02</td>
<td>Interpretation of Rule 101 — Other Considerations</td>
<td>1.200.005.03</td>
<td>Application of the Conceptual Framework for Independence and Ethical Conflicts Interpretation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.02</td>
<td>Interpretation of Rule 101 — Other Considerations</td>
<td>1.210.010.09</td>
<td>Conceptual Framework for Independence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.19</td>
<td>Network and network firms</td>
<td>1.220.010.01–.05</td>
<td>Network and Network Firms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior Code Citations</td>
<td>Title in Prior Code</td>
<td>New Citation</td>
<td>New Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.19</td>
<td>Network and network firms — Characteristics of a Network</td>
<td>1.220.010.06–.19</td>
<td>Characteristics of a Network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.16</td>
<td>The effect of alternative practice structures on the applicability of independence rules</td>
<td>1.220.020</td>
<td>Alternative Practice Structures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.142–.143</td>
<td>Use of Nonindependent CPA Firm on an Engagement</td>
<td>1.220.030</td>
<td>Use of a Nonindependent CPA Firm on an Engagement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.20</td>
<td>Application of the Independence Rules to Affiliates</td>
<td>1.224.010</td>
<td>Client Affiliates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.12</td>
<td>The effect of independence of relationships with entities included in the governmental financial statements</td>
<td>1.224.020</td>
<td>Entities Included in State and Local Government Financial Statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.200–.201</td>
<td>Actions Permitted When Independence is Impaired</td>
<td>1.226.010</td>
<td>Consenting to the Use of a Previously Issued Report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.188–.189</td>
<td>Indemnification Clause in Engagement Letters</td>
<td>1.228.010</td>
<td>Indemnification of a Covered Member</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.204–.205</td>
<td>Indemnification of a Client</td>
<td>1.228.020</td>
<td>Indemnification of an Attest Client</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.190–.191</td>
<td>Agreement with Attest Client to Use ADR Techniques</td>
<td>1.228.030.01–.02</td>
<td>Alternative Dispute Resolution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.192–.193</td>
<td>Commencement of ADR Proceeding</td>
<td>1.228.030.03</td>
<td>Alternative Dispute Resolution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New</td>
<td>Unpaid Fees</td>
<td>1.230.010.01</td>
<td>Unpaid Fees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.103–.104</td>
<td>Unpaid Fees</td>
<td>1.230.020.02–.03</td>
<td>Unpaid Fees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New</td>
<td>Fees and Other Types of Remuneration</td>
<td>1.230.020</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.02(A)(1)</td>
<td>Interpretation of Rule 101-A1</td>
<td>1.240.010.01–.02</td>
<td>Overview of Financial Interests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior Code Citations</td>
<td>Title in Prior Code</td>
<td>New Citation</td>
<td>New Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.17</td>
<td>Financial Relationships — Financial Interests</td>
<td>1.240.010.01–.02</td>
<td>Overview of Financial Interests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.02(B)</td>
<td>Interpretation of Rule 101-B</td>
<td>1.240.010.03</td>
<td>Overview of Financial Interests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.17</td>
<td>Financial Relationships — Mutual Funds</td>
<td>1.240.030</td>
<td>Mutual Funds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.17</td>
<td>Financial Relationships — Retirement, Savings, Compensation, or Similar Plans</td>
<td>1.240.040</td>
<td>Retirement, Savings, Compensation, or Similar Plans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.17</td>
<td>Financial Relationships — Partnerships</td>
<td>1.240.050</td>
<td>Partnerships</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.17</td>
<td>Financial Relationships — Limited Liability Companies</td>
<td>1.240.060</td>
<td>Limited Liability Companies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.17</td>
<td>Financial Relationships — Section 529 Plans</td>
<td>1.240.070</td>
<td>Section 529 Plans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.021–.022</td>
<td>Member Designated to Serve as Executor or Trustee</td>
<td>1.245.010.01</td>
<td>Trustee or Executor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.02(A)(2)</td>
<td>Interpretation of Rule 101-A2</td>
<td>1.245.010.02</td>
<td>Trustee or Executor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.17</td>
<td>Financial Relationships — Trust Investments</td>
<td>1.245.020</td>
<td>Trust Investments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.214–.215</td>
<td>Participation in Employee Benefit Plan Sponsored by Client</td>
<td>1.250.010.01</td>
<td>Plan is an Attest Client or is Sponsored by an Attest Client</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.17</td>
<td>Financial Relationships — Retirement, Savings, Compensation, or Similar Plans</td>
<td>1.250.010.02</td>
<td>Plan is an Attest Client or is Sponsored by an Attest Client</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior Code Citations</td>
<td>Title in Prior Code</td>
<td>New Citation</td>
<td>New Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.04</td>
<td>Employment or Association with Attest Clients</td>
<td>1.250.020</td>
<td>Former Partners and Professional Employees Participation in a Firm-Sponsored Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.140–.141</td>
<td>Member's Depository Relationship With Client Financial Institution</td>
<td>1.255.010</td>
<td>Depository Accounts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.081–.082</td>
<td>Financial Services Company Client Has Custody of a Member's Assets</td>
<td>1.255.020</td>
<td>Brokerage and Other Accounts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.17</td>
<td>Financial Relationships — Insurance Products</td>
<td>1.257.010</td>
<td>Insurance Policies with No Investment Option</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.02(A)(4)</td>
<td>Interpretation of Rule 101-A4</td>
<td>1.260.010</td>
<td>Loans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.07</td>
<td>Loans from financial institution clients and related terminology</td>
<td>1.260.020</td>
<td>Loans and Leases with Lending Institutions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.150–.151</td>
<td>Membership in Client Credit Union</td>
<td>1.260.020</td>
<td>Loans and Leases with Lending Institutions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.134–.135</td>
<td>Servicing of Loan</td>
<td>1.260.030</td>
<td>Servicing of a Loan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.182–.183</td>
<td>Member Leasing Property to or From Client</td>
<td>1.260.040</td>
<td>Leases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.220–.221</td>
<td>Member is Connected With an Entity That has a Loan to or From a Client</td>
<td>1.260.050</td>
<td>Association with an Entity that has a Loan To or From an Attest Client</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.14</td>
<td>Independence and cooperative arrangements with clients</td>
<td>1.265.010</td>
<td>Cooperative Arrangements with Attest Clients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior Code Citations</td>
<td>Title in Prior Code</td>
<td>New Citation</td>
<td>New Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.02(A)(3)</td>
<td>Interpretation of Rule 101-A3 Interpreted Joint Closely-Held Investments</td>
<td>1.265.020.01</td>
<td>Joint Closely-Held Investments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.184-.185</td>
<td>Joint Interest in Vacation Home</td>
<td>1.265.020.02</td>
<td>Joint Closely-Held Investments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.02</td>
<td>Interpretation of Rule 101 — Application of the Independence Rules to a Covered Member's Immediate Family</td>
<td>1.270.010</td>
<td>Immediate Family Members</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.02</td>
<td>Interpretation of Rule 101 — Application of the Independence Rules to a Covered Member's Immediate Family — Permitted Employment</td>
<td>1.270.020.01–.03</td>
<td>Immediate Family Member is Employed by the Attest Client</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.02</td>
<td>Interpretation of Rule 101 — Grandfathered Employment Relationships</td>
<td>1.270.020.04</td>
<td>Immediate Family Member is Employed by the Attest Client</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.02</td>
<td>Interpretation of Rule 101 — Application of the Independence Rules to a Covered Member's Immediate Family — Employee Benefits Plans Other Than Certain Share-Based Arrangements or Nonqualified Deferred Compensation Plans</td>
<td>1.270.030</td>
<td>Immediate Family Member Participation in an Employee Benefit Plan That Is an Attest Client or Is Sponsored by an Attest Client (Other than Certain Share-Based Arrangements or Nonqualified Deferred Compensation Plans)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.02</td>
<td>Interpretation of Rule 101 — Application of the Independence Rules to a Covered Member's Immediate Family — Employee Benefits Plans Other Than Certain Share-Based Arrangements or Nonqualified Deferred Compensation Plans</td>
<td>1.270.040</td>
<td>Immediate Family Member Participation in an Employee Benefit Plan With Financial Interests in an Attest Client</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior Code Citations</td>
<td>Title in Prior Code</td>
<td>New Citation</td>
<td>New Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.02</td>
<td>Interpretation of Rule 101 — Application of the Independence Rules to a Covered Member's Immediate Family — Share-Based Compensation Arrangements Resulting in Beneficial Financial Interests in Attest Clients</td>
<td>1.270.050</td>
<td>Immediate Family Member Participation in Share-Based Compensation Arrangements Resulting in Beneficially Owned Financial Interests in Attest Clients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.02</td>
<td>Interpretation of Rule 101 — Application of the Independence Rules to a Covered Member's Immediate Family — Share-Based Compensation Arrangements Resulting in Rights to Acquire Shares in an Attest Client</td>
<td>1.270.060</td>
<td>Immediate Family Member Participation in Share-Based Compensation Arrangements Resulting in Rights to Acquire Shares in an Attest Client</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.02</td>
<td>Interpretation of Rule 101 — Application of the Independence Rules to a Covered Member's Immediate Family — Share-Based Compensation Arrangements Based Upon Stock Appreciation</td>
<td>1.270.070</td>
<td>Immediate Family Member Participation in Share-Based Compensation Arrangements Based Upon Stock Appreciation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.02</td>
<td>Interpretation of Rule 101 — Application of the Independence Rules to a Covered Member's Immediate Family — Nonqualified Deferred Compensation Plans</td>
<td>1.270.080</td>
<td>Immediate Family Member Participation in a Nonqualified Deferred Compensation Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.02</td>
<td>Interpretation of Rule 101 — Application of the Independence Rules to a Close Relatives</td>
<td>1.270.100.01–.03</td>
<td>Close Relatives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.02</td>
<td>Interpretation of Rule 101 — Grandfathered Employment Relationships</td>
<td>1.270.100.04</td>
<td>Close Relatives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior Code Citations</td>
<td>Title in Prior Code</td>
<td>New Citation</td>
<td>New Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.02(C)</td>
<td>Interpretation of Rule 101-C</td>
<td>1.275.005.01–.02</td>
<td>Simultaneous Employment or Association with an Attest Client</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.21</td>
<td>Permitted Employment With Client Educational Institution</td>
<td>1.275.005.03</td>
<td>Simultaneous Employment or Association with an Attest Client</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.06</td>
<td>Honorary directorships and trusteeships of not-for-profit organization</td>
<td>1.275.010</td>
<td>Honorary Director or Trustee of a Not-for-Profit Organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.144–.145</td>
<td>Member on Advisory Board of Client</td>
<td>1.275.015</td>
<td>Member of Advisory Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.039–.040</td>
<td>Member Serving on Governmental Advisory Unit</td>
<td>1.275.020</td>
<td>Member of Governmental Advisory Committee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.164–.165</td>
<td>Campaign Treasurer</td>
<td>1.275.025</td>
<td>Campaign Treasurer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.027–.028</td>
<td>Member on Board of Federated Fund-Raising Organization</td>
<td>1.275.030</td>
<td>Member of Federated Fund-Raising Organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.128–.129</td>
<td>Member Serves on Board of Organization for Which Client Raises Funds</td>
<td>1.275.035</td>
<td>Member of Organization that Receives Funds From Fund-Raising Organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.02</td>
<td>Interpretation of Rule 101 — Application of the Independence Rules to Covered Members Formerly Employed by a Client or Otherwise Associated with a Client</td>
<td>1.277.010</td>
<td>Former Employment or Association with an Attest Client</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.04</td>
<td>Employment or Association with Attest Clients — Considering Employment or Association with the Client</td>
<td>1.279.010</td>
<td>Considering Employment or Association with an Attest Client</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior Code Citations</td>
<td>Title in Prior Code</td>
<td>New Citation</td>
<td>New Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.04</td>
<td>Employment or Association with Attest Clients</td>
<td>1.279.020</td>
<td>Subsequent Employment or Association with an Attest Client</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.033–.034</td>
<td>Member of Social Club</td>
<td>1.280.010</td>
<td>Member of a Social Club</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.003–.004</td>
<td>Association Membership</td>
<td>1.280.020</td>
<td>Member of a Trade Association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.061–.062</td>
<td>Performance of Services for CIRAs, Including Cooperatives, Condominium Associations, Planned Unit Developments, Homeowners Associations, and Timeshare Developments</td>
<td>1.280.030</td>
<td>Member of a Common Interest Realty Association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.150–.151</td>
<td>Membership in Client Credit Union</td>
<td>1.280.040</td>
<td>Member of a Credit Union</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.228–.229</td>
<td>Acceptance or Offering of Gifts and Entertainment to or From an Attest Client</td>
<td>1.285.010</td>
<td>Offering or Accepting Gifts or Entertainment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.08</td>
<td>The effect of actual or threatened litigation on independence</td>
<td>1.290.010</td>
<td>Actual or Threatened Litigation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.05</td>
<td>Performance of nonattest services — Introduction and Engagements Subject to Independence Rules of Certain Regulatory Bodies</td>
<td>1.295.010</td>
<td>Scope and Applicability of Nonattest Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.05</td>
<td>Cumulative Effect Providing Multiple Nonattest Services</td>
<td>1.295.020</td>
<td>Cumulative Effect on Independence When Providing Multiple Nonattest Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.05</td>
<td>Performance of nonattest services — Management Responsibilities</td>
<td>1.295.030</td>
<td>Management Responsibilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.05</td>
<td>Performance of nonattest services — General Requirements</td>
<td>1.295.040</td>
<td>General Requirements for Performing Nonattest Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior Code Citations</td>
<td>Title in Prior Code</td>
<td>New Citation</td>
<td>New Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.05</td>
<td>Performance of nonattest services — General Requirements</td>
<td>1.295.050</td>
<td>Documentation Requirements When Providing Nonattest Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.05</td>
<td>Performance of nonattest services — Management Responsibilities</td>
<td>1.295.105</td>
<td>Advisory Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.015–.016</td>
<td>Member Providing Advisory Services</td>
<td>1.295.105</td>
<td>Advisory Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.05</td>
<td>Performance of nonattest services — Appraisal, Valuation and Actuarial Services</td>
<td>1.295.110</td>
<td>Appraisal, Valuation, and Actuarial Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.05</td>
<td>Performance of nonattest services — Benefit Plan Administration</td>
<td>1.295.115</td>
<td>Benefit Plan Administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.05</td>
<td>Performance of nonattest services — Bookkeeping</td>
<td>1.295.120</td>
<td>Bookkeeping, Payroll, and Other Disbursements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.05</td>
<td>Performance of nonattest services — Nontax Disbursements</td>
<td>1.295.120</td>
<td>Bookkeeping, Payroll, and Other Disbursements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.05</td>
<td>Performance of nonattest services — Business Risk Consulting</td>
<td>1.295.125</td>
<td>Business Risk Consulting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.05</td>
<td>Performance of nonattest services — Corporate Finance — Consulting or Advisory</td>
<td>1.295.130</td>
<td>Corporate Finance Consulting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.05</td>
<td>Performance of nonattest services — Executive or employee search</td>
<td>1.295.135</td>
<td>Executive or Employee Recruiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.05</td>
<td>Performance of nonattest services — Forensic Accounting Services</td>
<td>1.295.140</td>
<td>Forensic Accounting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.05</td>
<td>Performance of nonattest services — Information Systems — Design, Installation or integration</td>
<td>1.295.145</td>
<td>Information Systems Design, Implementation, or Integration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior Code</td>
<td>Title in Prior Code</td>
<td>New Citation</td>
<td>New Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.05</td>
<td>Performance of nonattest services — Internal Audit Assistance Services</td>
<td>1.295.150</td>
<td>Internal Audit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.05</td>
<td>Performance of nonattest services — Investment — Advisory or Management</td>
<td>1.295.155</td>
<td>Investment Advisory or Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.05</td>
<td>Performance of nonattest services — Tax Compliance Services</td>
<td>1.295.160.01–05.07</td>
<td>Tax Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 101.13</td>
<td>Modified Application of Rule 101 for Engagements Performed in Accordance with Statements on Standards for Attestations Engagements</td>
<td>1.297.030</td>
<td>Engagements, Other Than AUPs, Performed in Accordance with SSAs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 201.01</td>
<td>General Standards</td>
<td>1.300.001</td>
<td>General Standards Rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.300.005</td>
<td>General Standards Rule — Application of the Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice and Ethical Conflicts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 201.02</td>
<td>Competence</td>
<td>1.300.010</td>
<td>Competence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior Code Citations</td>
<td>Title in Prior Code</td>
<td>New Citation</td>
<td>New Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 291.017-.018</td>
<td>Supervision of Technical Specialist on Management Consulting Services Engagements</td>
<td>1.300.020</td>
<td>Supervision of a Specialist on Consulting Engagements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 291.019-.020</td>
<td>Submission of Financial Statements by a Member in Public Practice</td>
<td>1.300.030</td>
<td>Submission of Financial Statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 291.015-.016</td>
<td>Subcontractor Selection for Management Consulting Service Engagements</td>
<td>1.300.040</td>
<td>Use of a Third-Party Service Provider</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 291.023-.024</td>
<td>Applicability of General and Technical Standards When Using a Third-Party Service Provider</td>
<td>1.300.040</td>
<td>Use of a Third-Party Service Provider</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 202.01</td>
<td>Compliance with Standards</td>
<td>1.310.001</td>
<td>Compliance with Standards Rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.310.005</td>
<td>Compliance with Standards Rule — Application of the Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice and Ethical Conflicts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 203.01</td>
<td>Accounting Principles</td>
<td>1.320.001</td>
<td>Accounting Principles Rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.320.005</td>
<td>Accounting Principles Rule — Application of the Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice and Ethical Conflicts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 203.05</td>
<td>Responsibility of employees for the preparation of financial statements in conformity with GAAP</td>
<td>1.320.010</td>
<td>Responsibility for Affirming that Financial Statements Are in Conformity With the Applicable Financial Reporting Framework</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 203.03</td>
<td>Status of FASB, GASB and FASAB interpretations</td>
<td>1.320.020</td>
<td>Status of Financial Accounting Standards Board, Governmental Accounting Standards Board, Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board, and International Accounting Standards Board Interpretations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior Code Citations</td>
<td>Title in Prior Code</td>
<td>New Citation</td>
<td>New Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 203.02</td>
<td>Departures from Generally Accepted Accounting Principles</td>
<td>1.320.030</td>
<td>Departures From Generally Accepted Accounting Principles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 203.06</td>
<td>Financial Statements Prepared Pursuant to Financial Reporting Frameworks Other than GAAP</td>
<td>1.320.040</td>
<td>Financial Statements Prepared Pursuant to Financial Reporting Frameworks Other than GAAP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.01</td>
<td>Acts Discreditable</td>
<td>1.400.001</td>
<td>Acts Discreditable Rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.400.005</td>
<td>Acts Discreditable Rule — Application of the Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice and Ethical Conflicts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.03</td>
<td>Discrimination and Harassment in Employment Practices</td>
<td>1.400.010</td>
<td>Discrimination and Harassment in Employment Practices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.07</td>
<td>Solicitation or disclosure of CPA examination questions and answers</td>
<td>1.400.020</td>
<td>Solicitation or Disclosure of CPA Examination Questions and Answers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.08</td>
<td>Failure to file tax returns or pay tax liability</td>
<td>1.400.030</td>
<td>Failure to File a Tax Return or Pay a Tax Liability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.05</td>
<td>Negligence in the preparation of financial statements or records</td>
<td>1.400.040</td>
<td>Negligence in the Preparation of Financial Statements or Records</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.06</td>
<td>Failure to follow requirements of governmental bodies, commissions, or other regulatory agencies</td>
<td>1.400.050</td>
<td>Governmental Bodies, Commissions, or Other Regulatory Agencies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.04</td>
<td>Failure to follow standards and/or procedures or other requirements in governmental audits</td>
<td>1.400.055</td>
<td>Governmental Audits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior Code Citations</td>
<td>Title in Prior Code</td>
<td>New Citation</td>
<td>New Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.09</td>
<td>Failure to follow requirements of governmental bodies, commissions, or other regulatory agencies on indemnification and limitation of liability provisions in connection with audit and other attest services</td>
<td>1.400.060</td>
<td>Indemnification and Limitation of Liability Provisions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.10</td>
<td>Confidential Information Obtained From Employment or Volunteer Activities</td>
<td>1.400.070</td>
<td>Confidential Information Obtained from Employment or Volunteer Activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.12</td>
<td>Use of CPA Credential</td>
<td>1.400.100</td>
<td>Use of the CPA Credential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.02</td>
<td>Response to Requests by Clients and Former Clients for Records — Terminology</td>
<td>1.400.200.01–05.07–10</td>
<td>Records Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 591.377–378</td>
<td>Requests for Records Pursuant to Interpretation 501-1</td>
<td>1.400.200.06</td>
<td>Records Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.400.200.11</td>
<td>Records Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 591.381–382</td>
<td>Member Removing Client Files From an Accounting Firm</td>
<td>1.400.210.01</td>
<td>Removing Client Files or Proprietary Information From a Firm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.400.210.02</td>
<td>Removing Client Files or Proprietary Information From a Firm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 391.027–028</td>
<td>Use of Confidential Information on Management Consulting Service Engagements</td>
<td>1.400.240</td>
<td>Use of Confidential Information From Nonclient Sources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.400.240</td>
<td>Use of Confidential Information From Nonclient Sources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.500.008</td>
<td>Unpaid Fees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 302.01</td>
<td>Contingent Fees</td>
<td>1.510.001</td>
<td>Contingent Fee Rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior Code Citations</td>
<td>Title in Prior Code</td>
<td>New Citation</td>
<td>New Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 302.02</td>
<td>Contingent Fees in tax matters</td>
<td>1.510.010</td>
<td>Tax Matters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 391.033–.034</td>
<td>Definition of the Receipt of a Contingent Fee or a Commission</td>
<td>1.510.020</td>
<td>Receipt of Contingent Fee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 391.037–.038</td>
<td>Receipt of Contingent Fees or Commissions by Member's Spouse</td>
<td>1.510.030</td>
<td>Services Performed by a Member's Spouse for a Contingent Fee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 391.049–.050</td>
<td>Commission and Contingent Fee Arrangements with Nonattest Client</td>
<td>1.510.040</td>
<td>Contingent Fee Arrangements with an Investment Advisory Services Nonattest Client that is Related to a Client</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 391.047–.048</td>
<td>Investment Advisory Services</td>
<td>1.510.050</td>
<td>Investment Advisory Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 503.01</td>
<td>Commissions and Referral Fees</td>
<td>1.520.001</td>
<td>Commissions and Referral Fee Rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 591.367–.368</td>
<td>Definition of the Receipt of a Contingent Fee or a Commission</td>
<td>1.520.020</td>
<td>Receipt of Commission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 591.373–.374</td>
<td>Receipt of Contingent Fees or Commissions by Member's Spouse</td>
<td>1.520.030</td>
<td>Services Performed by a Member's Spouse for a Commission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 591.375–.376</td>
<td>Referral of Products of Others</td>
<td>1.520.040</td>
<td>Referral of Products of Others</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior Code Citations</td>
<td>Title in Prior Code</td>
<td>New Citation</td>
<td>New Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 591.383–.384</td>
<td>Commission and Contingent Fee Arrangements with Nonattest Client</td>
<td>1.520.050</td>
<td>Commission Arrangements with an Investment Advisory Services Nonattest Client that is Related to a Client</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 591.369–.370</td>
<td>Sale of Products to Clients</td>
<td>1.520.060</td>
<td>Sale of Products to Clients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 591.371–.372</td>
<td>Billing for Subcontractor's Services</td>
<td>1.520.070</td>
<td>Billing for a Subcontractor's Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 502.01</td>
<td>Advertising and other forms of solicitation</td>
<td>1.600.001</td>
<td>Advertising and Other Forms of Solicitation Rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 502.06</td>
<td>Engagements obtained through efforts of third parties</td>
<td>1.600.010.01</td>
<td>False, Misleading, or Deceptive Acts in Advertising or Solicitations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 502.03</td>
<td>False, Misleading, or Deceptive Acts in Advertising or Solicitation</td>
<td>1.600.010.02</td>
<td>False, Misleading, or Deceptive Acts in Advertising or Solicitations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 591.365–.366</td>
<td>Use of the AICPA Personal Financial Specialist Designation</td>
<td>1.600.030</td>
<td>Use of AICPA-Awarded Designation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 502.07</td>
<td>Use of CPA Credential</td>
<td>1.600.100</td>
<td>Use of the CPA Credential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 301.01</td>
<td>Confidential Client Information</td>
<td>1.700.001</td>
<td>Confidential Client Information Rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 391.011–.012</td>
<td>Revealing Client Information to Competitors</td>
<td>1.700.010</td>
<td>Client Competitors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Advertising and Other Forms of Solicitation Rule — Application of the Conceptual Framework for Members in Public Practice and Ethical Conflicts
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prior Code Citations</th>
<th>Title in Prior Code</th>
<th>New Citation</th>
<th>New Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ET section 391.029–.030</td>
<td>Earlier Similar Management Consulting Service Study with Negative Outcome</td>
<td>1.700.020.01</td>
<td>Disclosing Information From Previous Engagements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 391.005–.006</td>
<td>Information to Successor Accountant About Tax Return Irregularities</td>
<td>1.700.020.02–.03</td>
<td>Disclosing Information From Previous Engagements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 391.031–.032</td>
<td>Disclosure of Confidential Client Information</td>
<td>1.700.030.01–.02</td>
<td>Disclosing Information to Persons or Entities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 391.041–.042</td>
<td>Member Providing Services for Company Executives</td>
<td>1.700.030.03</td>
<td>Disclosing Information to Persons or Entities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 391.001–.002</td>
<td>Use of a Third-Party Service Provider to Provide Professional Services to Clients or Administrative Support Services to the Member</td>
<td>1.700.040</td>
<td>Disclosing Information to a Third-Party Service Provider</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 301.04</td>
<td>Confidential information and the purchase, sale, or merger of a practice</td>
<td>1.700.050</td>
<td>Disclosing Client Information in Connection with a Review of the Member's Practice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 391.003–.004</td>
<td>Disclosure of Client Information to Trade Associations</td>
<td>1.700.060</td>
<td>Disclosure of Client Information to Third Parties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 391.039–.040</td>
<td>Disclosure of Confidential Client Information to Professional Liability Insurance Carrier</td>
<td>1.700.070</td>
<td>Disclosing Client Information During Litigation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 391.045–.046</td>
<td>Disclosure of Confidential Client Information in Legal or Alternative Dispute Resolution Proceedings</td>
<td>1.700.070</td>
<td>Disclosing Client Information During Litigation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior Code Citations</td>
<td>Title in Prior Code</td>
<td>New Citation</td>
<td>New Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 391.035–.036 Bank Director</td>
<td>1.700.080</td>
<td>Disclosing Client Information in Director Positions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 391.013–.014 Revealing Names of Clients</td>
<td>1.700.090</td>
<td>Disclosing Client Names</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 505.01 Form of Organization and Name</td>
<td>1.800.001</td>
<td>Form of Organization and Name Rule</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 505.03 Application of rules of conduct to members who own a separate business</td>
<td>1.810.010.01–.03</td>
<td>Ownership of a Separate Business</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 591.275–.276 Partner Having Separate Proprietorship</td>
<td>1.810.010.04</td>
<td>Ownership of a Separate Business</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 591.273–.274 Nonproprietary Partners</td>
<td>1.810.020</td>
<td>Partner Designation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 591.005–.006 Employment by Non-CPA Firm</td>
<td>1.810.030</td>
<td>A Member’s Responsibility for Nonmember Practitioners</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 591.281–.282 Responsibility for Non-CPA Partner</td>
<td>1.810.030</td>
<td>A Member’s Responsibility for Nonmember Practitioners</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 591.271–.272 Audit with Former Partner</td>
<td>1.810.040</td>
<td>Attest Engagement Performed with a Former Partner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 505.04 Application of rule 505 to alternative practice structures</td>
<td>1.810.050</td>
<td>Alternative Practice Structures</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 591.289–.290 Firm Name of Merged Partnerships</td>
<td>1.820.010</td>
<td>Use of a Retired Partner's Name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 591.379–.380 Non-CPA Partner</td>
<td>1.820.020</td>
<td>A Practice with Non-CPA Partners</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior Code Citations</td>
<td>Title in Prior Code</td>
<td>New Citation</td>
<td>New Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 505.05</td>
<td>Misleading Firm Names</td>
<td>1.820.030</td>
<td>Misleading Firm Names</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 505.06</td>
<td>Common Network Brand in Firm Name</td>
<td>1.820.040</td>
<td>Use of a Common Brand Name in Firm Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2.000</td>
<td>Members in Business — Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2.000.010</td>
<td><em>Conceptual Framework for Members in Business</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2.000.020</td>
<td>Members in Business — Ethical Conflicts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 102.01</td>
<td>Integrity and Objectivity</td>
<td>2.100.001</td>
<td>Integrity and Objectivity Rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2.100.005</td>
<td><em>Integrity and Objectivity Rule — Application of the Conceptual Framework for Members in Business and Ethical Conflicts</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 102.03</td>
<td>Conflicts of Interest</td>
<td>2.110.010</td>
<td>Conflicts of Interest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 191.226–.227</td>
<td>Acceptance or Offering of Gifts or Entertainment</td>
<td>2.120.010</td>
<td>Offering or Accepting Gifts or Entertainment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 102.02</td>
<td>Knowing misrepresentations in the preparation of financial statements or records</td>
<td>2.130.010</td>
<td>Knowing Misrepresentations in the Preparation of Financial Statements or Records</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 102.05</td>
<td>Subordination of judgment by a member</td>
<td>2.130.020</td>
<td>Subordination of Judgment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 102.04</td>
<td>Obligations of a member to his or her employer's external accountant</td>
<td>2.130.030</td>
<td>Obligation of a Member to His or Her Employer's External Accountant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 102.06</td>
<td>Applicability of rule 102 to members performing educational services</td>
<td>2.160.010</td>
<td>Educational Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 201.01</td>
<td>General Standards</td>
<td>2.300.001</td>
<td>General Standards Rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2.300.005</td>
<td><em>General Standards Rule — Application of the Conceptual Framework for Members in Business and Ethical Conflicts</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior Code Citations</td>
<td>Title in Prior Code</td>
<td>New Citation</td>
<td>New Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 201.02</td>
<td>Competence</td>
<td>2.300.010</td>
<td>Competence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 291.019–.020</td>
<td>Submission of Financial Statements by a Member in Public Practice</td>
<td>2.300.030</td>
<td>Submission of Financial Statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 202.01</td>
<td>Compliance with Standards</td>
<td>2.310.001</td>
<td>Compliance with Standards Rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 203.01</td>
<td>Accounting Principles</td>
<td>2.320.001</td>
<td>Accounting Principles Rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 203.05</td>
<td>Responsibility of employees for the preparation of financial statements in conformity with GAAP</td>
<td>2.320.010</td>
<td>Responsibility for Affirming that Financial Statements Are in Conformity With the Applicable Financial Reporting Framework</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 203.03</td>
<td>Status of FASB, GASB and FASAB interpretations</td>
<td>2.320.020</td>
<td>Status of Financial Accounting Standards Board, Governmental Accounting Standards Board, Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board, and International Accounting Standards Board Interpretations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 203.02</td>
<td>Departures from Generally Accepted Accounting Principles</td>
<td>2.320.030</td>
<td>Departures From Generally Accepted Accounting Principles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 203.06</td>
<td>Financial Statements Prepared Pursuant to Financial Reporting Frameworks Other than GAAP</td>
<td>2.320.040</td>
<td>Financial Statements Prepared Pursuant to Financial Reporting Frameworks Other than GAAP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.01</td>
<td>Acts Discreditable</td>
<td>2.400.001</td>
<td>Acts Discreditable Rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior Code Citations</td>
<td>Title in Prior Code</td>
<td>New Citation</td>
<td>New Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.03</td>
<td>Discrimination and Harassment in Employment Practices</td>
<td>2.400.010</td>
<td>Discrimination and Harassment in Employment Practices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.07</td>
<td>Solicitation or disclosure of CPA examination questions and answers</td>
<td>2.400.020</td>
<td>Solicitation or Disclosure of CPA Examination Questions and Answers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.08</td>
<td>Failure to file tax returns or pay tax liability</td>
<td>2.400.030</td>
<td>Failure to File a Tax Return or Pay a Tax Liability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.05</td>
<td>Negligence in the preparation of financial statements or records</td>
<td>2.400.040</td>
<td>Negligence in the Preparation of Financial Statements or Records</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.06</td>
<td>Failure to follow requirements of governmental bodies, commissions, or other regulatory agencies</td>
<td>2.400.050</td>
<td>Governmental Bodies, Commissions, or Other Regulatory Agencies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.09</td>
<td>Failure to follow requirements of governmental bodies, commissions, or other regulatory agencies on indemnification and limitation of liability provisions in connection with audit and other attest services</td>
<td>2.400.060</td>
<td>Indemnification and Limitation of Liability Provisions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.10</td>
<td>Confidential Information Obtained From Employment or Volunteer Activities</td>
<td>2.400.070</td>
<td>Confidential Information Obtained from Employment or Volunteer Activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.11</td>
<td>False, Misleading, or Deceptive Acts in Promoting or Marketing Professional Services</td>
<td>2.400.090</td>
<td>False, Misleading, or Deceptive Acts in Promoting or Marketing Professional Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior Code Citations</td>
<td>Title in Prior Code</td>
<td>New Citation</td>
<td>New Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.12</td>
<td>Use of CPA Credential</td>
<td>2.400.100</td>
<td>Use of the CPA Designation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3.000</td>
<td>Other Members — Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3.000.030</td>
<td>Applicability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.01</td>
<td>Acts Discreditable</td>
<td>3.400.001</td>
<td>Acts Discreditable Rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.03</td>
<td>Discrimination and Harassment in Employment Practices</td>
<td>3.400.010</td>
<td>Discrimination and Harassment in Employment Practices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.07</td>
<td>Solicitation or disclosure of CPA examination questions and answers</td>
<td>3.400.020</td>
<td>Solicitation or Disclosure of CPA Examination Questions and Answers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.08</td>
<td>Failure to file tax returns or pay tax liability</td>
<td>3.400.030</td>
<td>Failure to File a Tax Return or Pay a Tax Liability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.10</td>
<td>Confidential Information Obtained From Employment or Volunteer Activities</td>
<td>3.400.070</td>
<td>Confidential Information Obtained from Former Employment or Previous Volunteer Activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3.400.090</td>
<td>False, Misleading, or Deceptive Acts in Promoting or Marketing Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET section 501.12</td>
<td>Use of CPA Credential</td>
<td>3.400.100</td>
<td>Use of the CPA Credential</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>